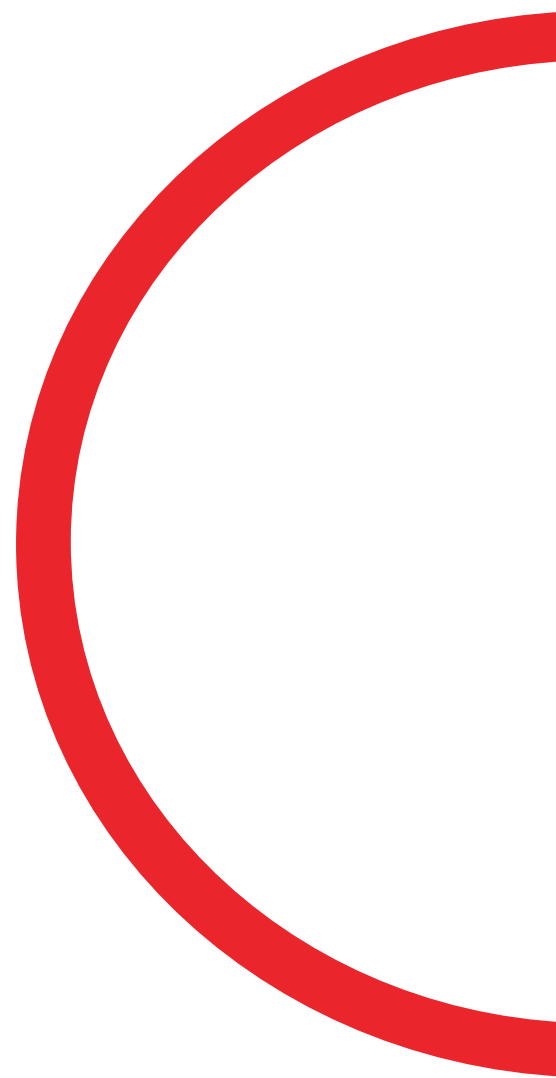





Ultimate Getting Started with Japanese Box Set

Lessons 1 to 55



1-55



Introduction to Japanese

Lessons 1-25

1-25

Introduction

This is Innovative Language Learning.

Go to InnovativeLanguage.com/audiobooks to get the lesson notes for this course and sign up for your FREE lifetime account.

This Audiobook will take you through the basics of Japanese with Basic Bootcamp, All About and Pronunciation lessons.

The 5 Basic Bootcamp lessons each center on a practical, real-life conversation. At the beginning of the lesson, we'll introduce the background of the conversation. Then, you'll hear the conversation two times: One time at natural native speed and one time with English translation. After the conversation, you'll learn carefully selected vocabulary and key grammar concepts.

In the 15 All About lessons, you ' ll learn all about Japanese and Japan. Our native teachers and language experts will explain everything you need to know to get started in Japanese, including how to understand the writing system, grammar, pronunciation, background on culture, tradition, society, and more -- all in a fun and educational format!

The 5 Pronunciation lessons take you step-by-step through the most basic skill in any language: How to pronounce words and sentences like a native speaker. You ' ll go from basic concepts to advanced tips and will soon sound like you ' ve been speaking Japanese your whole life.

Before starting the lessons, go to InnovativeLanguage.com/audiobooks to get the lesson notes for this course and sign up for your FREE lifetime account.



Basic Bootcamp

Self Introduction/Basic Greetings

1

| | |
|----------------|---|
| Vocabulary | 2 |
| Grammar Points | 2 |

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

Vocabulary

| Kanji | Kana | Romaji | English |
|------------|-------------|--------------------------|-------------------|
| こんにちは | こんにちは | kon'nichi wa | hello |
| わたし | わたし | watashi | I, me |
| はじめまして | はじめまして | hajimemashite | Nice to meet you. |
| どうぞ | どうぞ | dōzo | please |
| よろしくお願いします | よろしくおねがいします | yoroshiku onegai shimasu | Nice to meet you. |

Vocabulary Sample Sentences

みなさん、こんにちは。
わたしはカウンセラーです。
こんにちは。はじめまして。
太郎の母です。どうぞよろしく。
田中太郎です。よろしくおねがいします。

Hello, everyone.
I'm a counselor.
Hello. Nice to meet you.
I'm Taro's mother. Please be nice to me.
I'm Taro Tanaka. It's a pleasure to meet you.

みなさん、こんにちは。
わたしはカウンセラーです。
こんにちは。はじめまして。
太郎の母です。どうぞよろしく。
田中太郎です。よろしくおねがいします。

Hello, everyone.
I'm a counselor.
Hello. Nice to meet you.
I'm Taro's mother. Please be nice to me.
I'm Taro Tanaka. It's a pleasure to meet you.

Grammar Points

Basic Bootcamp #1: Self Introduction/Basic Greetings

The Focus of This Lesson is to Teach You Some Japanese Essentials to Get You Speaking Right from Your First Lesson.

Today's phrases are used when we introduce ourselves:

A: こんにちは。はじめまして。私は田中です。

A: Kon'nichi wa. Hajimemashite. Watashi wa Tanaka desu.

A: "Hello. Nice to meet you. My name is Tanaka."

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

B: 私は鈴木です。よろしくお願いします。

B: Watashi wa Suzuki desu. Yoroshiku o-negai shimasu.

B: "My name is Suzuki. Nice to meet you."

Vocabulary and Lesson Notes

こんにちは

Kon'nichi wa

This phrase is the Japanese equivalent of "hello" and can be used at any time of day.

わたし

Watashi

The word watashi (わたし) means "I" or "me." This is a polite way for both males and females to refer to themselves.

は

wa

"Wa" is a particle that follows the topic you are going to be talking about (often called the topic marking particle). Think of it as the equivalent to "as for" in English.

です

Desu

This word is called a copula and refers to one type of "to be" verb. In the above conversation, we showed the construction as watashi wa [name] desu (わたしは [name]です, My name is [name]). Desu will always come at the end of a sentence. For more information on the copula, please see Conjugation Lesson #1.

はじめまして

Hajimemashite

This phrase means "nice to meet you," and we use it when meeting someone for the first time. We often follow this phrase with the next one.

よろしくお願いします

Yoroshiku onegai shimasu

We often use this phrase when meeting people for the first time. There is no English equivalent, but literally, this phrase roughly translates to, "Please look favorably upon me." Using this phrase shows respect for the person you are meeting, and also indicates that you are looking forward to a good relationship.

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

with them. Whether you are meeting one person or fifty, using this phrase will make a great impression.

To make this phrase even more polite, you can attach the word *dōzo* (どうぞ) to the beginning to create *Dōzo yoroshiku onegai shimasu* (どうぞよろしくお願いします). On the other hand, if you are speaking to someone who is much lower in status than yourself, you can shorten this phrase to simply *yoroshiku* (よろしく).

[Names in Japanese](#)

In Japanese, we give our full names by saying or writing our last name before our first name. In formal situations, it is common for people to introduce themselves using their full name or only their last name. When addressing other people you are not familiar with or are higher than you in status, it is important to attach the suffix *san* (さん) to their name. Be careful, however, not to attach *san* (さん) to your own name!



Basic Bootcamp

Basic Japanese sentence structure

2

| | |
|----------------|---|
| Vocabulary | 2 |
| Grammar Points | 2 |

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

Vocabulary

| Kanji | Kana | Romaji | English |
|-------|---------|-------------|-----------------------------------|
| 日本 | にほん | Nihon | Japan |
| 日本人 | にほんじん | Nihon-jin | Japanese |
| アメリカ | アメリカ | Amerika | America |
| アメリカ人 | あめりかじん | Amerika-jin | American (Nationality) |
| イギリス | イギリス | Igirisu | England |
| イギリス人 | イギリスじん | Igirisu-jin | English, British (nationality) |
| 中国 | ちゅうごく | Chūgoku | China |
| 中国人 | ちゅうごくじん | Chūgoku-jin | China (nationality) |

Vocabulary Sample Sentences

日本に住んでいます。
 夏子は日本人です。
 アメリカは大きいです。
 ホワイトさんはアメリカ人です。
 イギリスのクッキーはおいしい。
 私はイギリス人です。
 私の出身は中国です。
 ヨウメイさんは中国人です。
 日本に住んでいます。
 夏子は日本人です。
 アメリカは大きいです。
 ホワイトさんはアメリカ人です。
 イギリスのクッキーはおいしい。
 私はイギリス人です。
 私の出身は中国です。
 ヨウメイさんは中国人です。

I live in Japan.
 Natsuko is Japanese.
 The U.S. is huge.
 Mr. White is American.
 British cookies are delicious.
 I'm British.
 I'm from China.
 Yao Ming is Chinese.
 I live in Japan.
 Natsuko is Japanese.
 The U.S. is huge.
 Mr. White is American.
 British cookies are delicious.
 I'm British.
 I'm from China.
 Yao Ming is Chinese.

Grammar Points

Basic Bootcamp #2: Basic Japanese Sentence Structure

The Focus of This Lesson is Talking About Yourself in Japanese.

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

In this lesson, we learned the following phrases:

A: こんにちは。私はナオミです。日本人です。

A: Kon'nichi wa. Watashi wa Naomi desu. Nihon-jin desu.

A: "Hello, I'm Naomi. I'm Japanese."

B: こんにちは。私はピーターです。アメリカ人です。

B: Kon'nichi wa. Watashi wa Pitā desu. Amerika-jin desu.

B: "Hello, I'm Peter. I'm American."

Talking About Yourself

To talk about one's nationality, you add the word for person, jin (人) to the name of a country. Let's take a look at some examples.

Countries and Nationalities:

1. 日本
Nihon
"Japan"
2. 日本人
Nihon-jin
"Japanese person"
3. アメリカ
Amerika
"America"
4. アメリカ人
Amerika-jin
"American person"

Other Countries and Nationalities:

1. イギリス
Igirisu
"England"
2. イギリス人
Igirisu-jin

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

- “English person”
- 中国
Chūgoku
“China”
- 中国人
Chūgoku-jin
“Chinese person”

Talking About Nationality:

1. (私は) アメリカ人です。
(Watashi wa) amerika-jin desu.
I'm American.

☆Note that when talking about yourself, you don't need to say watashi wa if it's already understood that you are talking about yourself. In that case, your nationality plus desu is enough.

More examples:

1. 私たちはアメリカ人です。
Watashi-tachi wa amerika-jin desu.
“We're American.”
2. あなたは日本人です。
Anata wa nihon-jin desu.
“You're Japanese.”





Basic Bootcamp

Useful Phrases for Learning

3

Grammar Points

2

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

Grammar Points

Basic Bootcamp #3: Useful Phrases for Learning Japanese

The Focus of This Lesson is to Learn Some Japanese Phrases That Come in Handy When Learning More Japanese

1. マービン: すみません。これは日本語で何ですか。
 Mābin: Sumimasen. Kore wa Nihon-go de nan desu ka?
 Marvin: "Excuse me. How do you say this in Japanese?"
2. ウエイトレス: "しょうゆ".
 Uētoresu: Shōyu.
 Waitress: "Shoyu."
3. マービン: すみません。もう一度お願いします。
 Mābin: Sumimasen. Mō ichi-do onegai shimasu.
 Marvin: "Excuse me, could you say that one more time, please?"
4. ウエイトレス: "しょうゆ".
 Uētoresu: Shōyu.
 Waitress: "Shoyu."
5. マービン: すみません。ゆっくりお願いします。
 Mābin: Sumimasen. Yukkuri onegai shimasu.
 Marvin: "Excuse me, could you say it slowly, please?"
6. ウエイトレス: "しょ・う・ゆ"
 Uētoresu: Sho-u-yu.
 Waitress: "Sho-u-yu."

Vocabulary and Lesson Notes

すみません。

Sumimasen.

"Excuse me."

Sumimasen translates to "excuse me" in English. We often use it to try to get someone's attention when we are about to say something or ask a question.

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

「 word 」 は日本語で何ですか。

[word] wa Nihon-go de nan desu ka?

"How do you say (word) in Japanese?"

You can use this phrase when you don't know what something is called in Japanese. In the blank, you can put an English word or point to something and use kore wa (これは, "this") like Marvin did in the dialogue.

If someone uses a Japanese word that you are not familiar with and you would like to ask for the English translation, you can use the same structure to ask what it is called in English:

英語で何ですか。

Eigo de nan desu ka?

"What is it in English?"

お願いします。

Onegai shimasu.

"Please."

Onegai shimasu is a phrase that means "please." You can use this phrase when you are asking for something or asking someone to do something for you.

You can pair the following two phrases with onegai shimasu to ask someone to repeat something.

もう一度

Mō ichi-do

"One more time"

ゆっくり

Yukkuri

"Slowly"



Basic Bootcamp

Counting I

4

Grammar Points

2

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

Grammar Points

Basic Bootcamp #4: Counting I

The Focus of This Lesson is to Teach the Numbers 1 to 100 in Japanese

Dialog

Setting: Kazuki is at the gym, counting while doing exercises on a weight lifting machine.

Kazuki: 1 (ichi), 2 (ni), 3 (san), 4 (yon), 5 (go), 6, (roku) 7 (nana), 8 (hachi), 9 (kyū), 10 (jū)

Vocabulary and Lesson Notes

Numbers from 0-10:

| | | |
|----|---------------|----------|
| 0 | zero / rei | 〇 (or 零) |
| 1 | ichi | 一 |
| 2 | ni | 二 |
| 3 | san | 三 |
| 4 | shi / yon | 四 |
| 5 | go | 五 |
| 6 | roku | 六 |
| 7 | shichi / nana | 七 |
| 8 | hachi | 八 |
| 9 | kyū | 九 |
| 10 | jū | 十 |

Numbers from 11-20:

| | | |
|----|---------|----|
| 11 | jū-ichi | 十一 |
| 12 | jū-ni | 十二 |
| 13 | jū-san | 十三 |
| 14 | jū-yon | 十四 |
| 15 | jū-go | 十五 |
| 16 | jū-roku | 十六 |

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

| | | |
|----|----------|----|
| 17 | jū-nana | 十七 |
| 18 | jū-hachi | 十八 |
| 19 | jū-kyū | 十九 |
| 20 | ni-jū | 二十 |

Multiples of 10 up to 100:

| | | |
|-----|----------|----|
| 10 | jū | 十 |
| 20 | ni-jū | 二十 |
| 30 | san-jū | 三十 |
| 40 | yon-jū | 四十 |
| 50 | go-jū | 五十 |
| 60 | roku-jū | 六十 |
| 70 | nana-jū | 七十 |
| 80 | hachi-jū | 八十 |
| 90 | kyū-jū | 九十 |
| 100 | hyaku | 百 |

[Some more numbers discussed in this lesson:](#)

25

ni-jū-go
二十五

43

yon-jū-san
四十三

77

nana-jū-nana
七十七

92

kyū-jū-ni
九十二

48

yon-jū-hachi
四十八

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

55

go-jū-go

五十五

100

hyaku

百

Culture Tip

The Japanese are very superstitious when it comes to numbers. Many people believe that certain numbers are auspicious, while other numbers are unlucky ones you should avoid. This originates from the fact that many Japanese words are homophones. Certain numbers have pronunciations that are similar to other words that have either good or bad connotations.

For example, the Japanese believe the number four is very unlucky and they avoid it whenever possible. The reason is that the pronunciation of the number four (四, shi) in Japanese is very similar in sound to the word for "death" (死, shi). We consider the number nine (九, kyū) to be unlucky for the same reason—one of the pronunciations is ku, which is the same as the word for "suffering" [(苦, ku)]. Because of these beliefs, many hospitals and apartment buildings do not have room numbers with four or nine in them.

On the other hand, the Japanese believe that the numbers seven (七, shichi) and eight (八, hachi) are lucky numbers. The concept of "lucky seven" is largely a Western one, but the Seven Deities of Good Fortune (七福神, shichifukujin) are one instance of the number seven signifying luck in Japanese folk religion. The Japanese consider the number eight (八, hachi) to be lucky because of the way the strokes in the Chinese character gradually broaden out, which is connected to the idea of growing prosperous.



Basic Bootcamp

Counting II

5

Grammar Points

2

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

Grammar Points

Basic Bootcamp #5: Counting II


The Focus of This Lesson is to Teach Numbers from 100 to 100,000 in Japanese

Let's take a look at the numbers from 100 to 100,000 in Japanese.

Dialog

Setting: Hiro and Kazuki are at an auction, where an antique comic book is being auctioned off.

Auctioneer: And here we have an antique comic book—this is a true collector's item that's one of a kind! We'll start the bidding at 100 yen.



Hiro: Hyaku! (100!)
Kazuki: Ni-hyaku! (200!)
Hiro: Go-hyaku! (500!)
Kazuki: Sen! (1,000!)
Hiro: Sen san-byaku! (1,300!)
Kazuki: Sen ro-ppyaku! (1,600!)
Hiro: Ni-sen! (2,000!)
Kazuki: San-zen! (3,000!)
Hiro: Ha-ssen! (8,000!!!)
Kazuki:

Auctioneer: Sold! To this person right here for 8,000 yen!

Hiro: Yatta! (Yay!)

Vocabulary and Lesson Notes

百

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

hyaku

100

千

sen

1,000

万

ichi-man

10,000

To create multiples of hundreds and thousands, attach the number before the word hyaku ("hundred") and sen ("thousand").

| | | | | | |
|-----|------------|----|-------|----------|----|
| 100 | hyaku | 百 | 1,000 | sen | 千 |
| 200 | ni-hyaku | 二百 | 2,000 | ni-sen | 二千 |
| 300 | san-byaku* | 三百 | 3,000 | san-zen* | 三千 |
| 400 | yon-hyaku | 四百 | 4,000 | yon-sen | 四千 |
| 500 | go-hyaku | 五百 | 5,000 | go-sen | 五千 |
| 600 | ro-ppyaku* | 六百 | 6,000 | roku-sen | 六千 |
| 700 | nana-hyaku | 七百 | 7,000 | nana-sen | 七千 |
| 800 | ha-ppyaku* | 八百 | 8,000 | ha-ssen | 八千 |
| 900 | kyū-haku | 九百 | 9,000 | kyū-sen | 九千 |

*The words marked with an asterisk are exceptions. Please note the sound changes that take place in these words.

| | | |
|-----------|-----------|----|
| 10,000 | ichi-man | 一万 |
| 20,000 | ni-man | 二万 |
| 30,000 | san-man | 三万 |
| 40,000 | yon-man | 四万 |
| 50,000 | go-man | 五万 |
| 60,000 | roku-man | 六万 |
| 70,000 | nana-man | 七万 |
| 80,000 | hachi-man | 八万 |
| 90,000 | kyū-man | 九万 |
| 10,000 | jū-man | 十万 |
| 1,000,000 | hyaku-man | 百万 |

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

More Complex Numbers

百十一

hyaku jū-ichi

111

四百七十

yon-hyaku nana-jū

470

六百二十一

roppyaku ni-jū-ichi

621

三千五百九十

san-zen go-hyaku kyū-jū

3,590

七千八百八十

nana-sen ha-ppyaku hachi-jū

7,880



All About

Top 5 Reasons to study Japanese

1

Grammar Points

2

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

Grammar Points

Background of the Japanese Language

1. Japanese is thought to be an isolated language or an Altaic language. It ranks in the list of the top ten languages based on number of native speakers, with around 130 million people speaking Japanese as their native language.
2. The Japanese language is rich with regional dialects, with some being so radically different from *hyōjun-go* (標準語), the "standard dialect," that even some native speakers have trouble understanding them. The most well-known dialect is Kansai-ben (関西弁) the "Kansai dialect," which is spoken throughout the Kansai region of Japan. The Kansai region refers to an area in western Japan that includes major cities Osaka and Kyoto.
3. The Japanese written language consists of three alphabets: hiragana, katakana, and kanji. Hiragana and katakana are phonetic alphabets, with the latter being used primarily for writing foreign words. Kanji is a system of characters of Chinese origin used to represent various ideas.
4. As mentioned above, the Japanese language's writing system has borrowed heavily from that of the Chinese language. Although the number of borrowed Chinese characters is in the thousands, many of them have fallen out of use. The Japanese Ministry of Education has created a list of 1,945 *jōyō kanji* (常用漢字) "common use kanji" made up of characters commonly used in everyday life. Japanese children will have studied all of these kanji by the time they graduate from junior high school.

About Japan

Japan is known as *Nihon* or *Nippon* (日本) to the Japanese, with the two characters meaning "sun" and "origin." This is why Japan is sometimes known as the "Land of the Rising Sun."

Where Japanese Is Spoken

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

Japanese is mainly spoken on the island of Japan, but there are large communities of Japanese speakers all over the world, including China, Korea, Australia, the United States, Canada, and many other regions.

Top Five Reasons to Learn Japanese

So why should you learn Japanese? Here are some of the top reasons!

#5. To communicate with Japanese people! Over 130 million people throughout the world speak Japanese, placing it in the top ten languages spoken in the world. Just imagine all of the conversations you could have!

#4. Japanese pronunciation is easy! Japanese is pronounced just the way it looks, so you can start speaking it right away.

#3. You will learn more than just a language. Learning Japanese will give you great insight into the world of Japanese culture you just can't get any other way. By learning how the language works, you'll learn more about how the culture works.

#2. Japanese is fun! Japan has a lot to offer in the way of pop culture—fun and interesting movies, music, TV shows, comics, games—you name it! Learning Japanese will give you even greater access to the rich world of Japanese pop culture.

#1. Learning Japanese makes you smarter! Recent scientific studies show that learning a second language can actually hold off Alzheimer's Disease. Learning a second language also increases your memory and makes you stay sharper, helps your attention span, and sharpens your critical thinking skills. What excuse is there NOT to study Japanese now?



All About

Learn the Japanese Writing System

2

Grammar Points

2

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

Grammar Points

The Writing System

The Japanese writing system uses two syllabic scripts, known separately as hiragana (ひらがな) and katakana (カタカナ) and collectively as kana (かな), as well as thousands of Chinese characters known as kanji (漢字). Each script serves a different function. We use hiragana for grammatical elements and for words that do not use kanji (or for words where the author doesn't know the kanji). We most frequently use katakana to write borrowed words of foreign origin and onomatopoeic sound effects. Finally, we use kanji for words of both Japanese and Chinese origin as well as many Japanese names.

The earliest written form of Japanese was based on kanji. In this system, known as man'yōgana, these kanji were used for their pronunciation rather than their meaning. Because this system was quite complicated, kana were invented as a way to simplify it. As a result, each hiragana and katakana character comes from a simplified version of a man'yōgana kanji. If you look at some of these man'yōgana kanji and their simplified kana equivalents side-by-side, it is easy to see how they came to be.

There are forty-six characters in the hiragana and katakana scripts, for a total of ninety-two characters in all. These characters represent sounds, specifically syllables. A syllable is generally made up of a consonant plus a vowel, though some are only a vowel. In Japanese, there are five vowels (a, i, u, e, and o) and fourteen basic consonants (k, s, t, n, h, m, y, r, w, g, z, d, b, and p).

We use the hiragana syllabary for two types of words that do not use kanji: okurigana (送り仮名), which are inflected verb and adjective endings; and for grammatical elements called "particles." Hiragana is also used to write furigana (ふりがな), small symbols placed above or to the side of a kanji character that indicate how it is read. While furigana is most frequently used to aid children and foreigners learning Japanese, it is also used when the reading for a kanji is particularly difficult or uncommon. Hiragana are characterized by their curvy, flowing lines.

We use the katakana syllabary for gairaigo (外来語), words of foreign origin,

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

onomatopoeic words that indicate sounds, scientific names, and also for emphasis, much like how italics are used in English. Katakana are characterized by their angular, boxy lines.

Kanji are Chinese characters that have been adapted into Japanese over many years. The characters were originally pictographs of people, animals, and other objects.

| Kanji | Reading | "Meaning" |
|-------|---------|------------|
| 口 | kuchi | "mouth" |
| 山 | yama | "mountain" |

As you can see in the table above, the character 口, **pronounced** kuchi, means "mouth" and is a box shape that resembles an open mouth. Another example is the character 山, **pronounced** yama, which means "mountain" and indeed looks like the skeleton of a mountain. However, over the centuries, kanji have become increasingly stylized and most no longer resemble the things they represent. Kanji are made up of smaller parts known as radicals. Many characters have been combined with others to create new ones. When written on the page, each character is given exactly the same amount of space, no matter how complex it is. In written Japanese, there are no spaces between characters.

The number of kanji in existence number into the tens of thousands, but the good news is that a large number of these are rarely used variants, accumulated throughout history. The Japanese government has created a list of characters recommended for daily use known as **jōyō kanji** (常用漢字), **which currently contains** 1,945 characters (as of 2009). As this list occasionally undergoes revisions, this number may increase in the future. Studies have shown that full literacy in the Japanese language requires knowledge of around two thousand characters.

Most kanji have at least two different kinds of readings: kun yomi (訓読み), which is the Japanese reading, and on yomi (音読み), which is the original Chinese reading. To give an example, we can read the kanji 水 ("water") as either mizu (kun yomi) or sui (on yomi). We usually use the kun yomi when the kanji stands alone and the on yomi when the kanji is part of a compound. However, there are exceptions to this rule you simply must remember.

Rōmaji (ローマ字) is Japanese transliterated into the Roman alphabet. With rōmaji, one can read Japanese without any prior knowledge of the Japanese writing system. There are several systems of rōmaji, with the Hepburn system being the most widely

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

used.





All About

Learn Japanese Grammar

3

Grammar Points

2

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

Grammar Points

Basic Japanese Grammar

Welcome to our explanation of Basic Japanese Grammar! Now, we know the mere mention of grammar is enough to make your palms sweat and perhaps bring back some not-so-good memories of your old high school language classes. But don't worry - we're here to give you a basic overview of Japanese grammar using language that's easy to understand - no drawn-out, long-winded explanations here! Learn Japanese grammar quickly while having fun at the same time!

Before we take a look at Japanese grammar, let's quickly review the basics of English grammar. By understanding more about how English grammar works, you'll be able to see how it differs from Japanese grammar.

First, let's take a look at sentence order.

English is what we call an SVO language, which means the sentences come in the order of subject-verb-object. Let's illustrate this with an example.

English Sentence Order

| Subject | Verb | Object |
|---------|------|--------|
| I | eat | fruit |

The subject, or the thing taking the action, is "I." The verb, or action, is "eat." The object, or the thing receiving the action, is "fruit." This is an example of a sentence in an SVO language.

Japanese is a bit different from English in this respect. Japanese is what's called an SOV language. This means the subject comes first, followed by the object, and then the verb. Remember that: the verb comes last. So our previous example, "I eat fruit" in English, becomes "I fruit eat" when put in Japanese SOV order.

Japanese Sentence Order

| Subject | Object | Verb |
|---------|--------|------|
| I | fruit | eat |

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

This is one of the biggest differences between English and Japanese grammar and one of the most important aspects to keep in mind!

Characteristics of the Japanese Language

Now let's compare some characteristics of the Japanese language with the English language. First, we'll talk about features that are much simpler than their English counterparts are.

Tense

Let's start with tense. Tense is a method we use in English to refer to time - past, present, and future. If you are a native English speaker, you might not even be aware of how many tenses there are in English. Let's think about the future tense for a moment. The present-tense sentence "I jog", when changed to the future tense, becomes "I will jog" or even "I'm going to jog". (And there's even a slight difference between them!)

Japanese, on the other hand, only has two tenses: past and non-past. It's called non-past because Japanese uses the same tense for the present and future. How does this work? Let's take a look! Here's an example of our sentence in the present tense.

(スーパーに行きます。)

Sūpā ni ikimasu.

"I go to the supermarket."

So how do we change this to the future tense? Simple! We just add a word that indicates the action will occur sometime in the future:

[(明日/来週) スーパーに行きます。]

Ashita/raishū Sūpā ni ikimasu.

"I will go to the supermarket tomorrow/next week."

There you have it! By adding a word like "tomorrow" or "next week" that indicates some point in the future, we've turned our present tense into future tense without even changing the verb.

Conjugation

English is full of irregular verbs. In many cases, we can turn present tense verbs into past tense by adding the suffix -ed to the end, but think of how many exceptions there are to this rule: "fly" becomes "flew," "run" becomes "ran," "buy"

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

becomes "bought"...the list goes on! If you've ever studied a Romance language, then you know how common exceptions are when it comes to conjugating verbs. In contrast, Japanese only has two - count them - two verbs that conjugate irregularly. The rest follow the same patterns, so they're easy to get the hang of! Japanese verbs are divided up into three different groups according to how they conjugate, which we will refer to as Class 1, Class 2, and Class 3 later on.

English and many other languages also conjugate verbs according to who's taking the action: for example, "I go" vs. "he goes." When you get into Romance languages, this system gets even more complex. However, in Japanese, it doesn't matter who is doing the action - the verb will not change! Let's look at a few examples so we can really appreciate this advantage of Japanese. First, note that the verb "to go" is *ikimasu*. The other words in red are "I", "him", and "you", respectively.

1. 私は学校に行きます。
Watashi wa gakkō ni *ikimasu*.
 "I go to school."
2. 彼は学校に行きます。
Kare wa gakkō ni *ikimasu*.
 "He goes to school."
3. あなた達は学校に行きます。
Anata-tachi wa gakkō ni *ikimasu*.
 "You (pl.) go to school."

Take a look at *ikimasu*! It doesn't change! Who is doing the action has no effect on the following verb. Great, isn't it?

Singulars and Plurals

Remember learning all of the complicated rules for forming plurals in English when you were in grade school? We first learn that you add the suffix -s to a word to make it plural, but then came one exception after another, such as words like knives, candies, and mice. Well now, think about this: Japanese words almost never change to reflect plurals. *Nezumi*, the word for "mouse," could refer to one mouse or ten mice! What a big change from having two different words to differentiate between singular and plural.

Forming Questions

Think for a moment about how you form questions in English. You have to change the order of the sentence. Here's an example:

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

"He is a student" becomes "Is he a student?"

In Japanese, it's extremely easy to create questions. By simply putting ka at the end of a sentence, you can turn it into a question! Let's take a look at the Japanese equivalent of the sentence above:

| | | |
|-------------------------|---|----------------------------|
| 彼は学生です。 | → | 彼は学生ですか？ |
| (Kare wa gakusei desu.) | → | (Kare wa gakusei desu ka?) |
| "He is a student." | → | "Is he a student?" |

Let's look at one more:

| | | |
|----------------------------------|---|-------------------------------------|
| あなたは東京に住んでいます。 | → | あなたは東京に住んでいますか。 |
| (Anata wa Tōkyō ni sunde imasu.) | → | (Anata wa Tōkyō ni sunde imasu ka?) |
| "You live in Tokyo." | → | "Do you live in Tokyo?" |

Okay, now let's take a look at some characteristics unique to the Japanese language that may not have any equivalent in English.

Formal and Informal Speech

In English, we can use certain words and phrases to make our speech sound more polite to others. Japanese uses entirely different grammar structures when it comes to polite speech. There are three politeness levels in spoken Japanese: informal, formal, and honorific.

Gender

By gender, we do not mean feminine and masculine words that show up in many of the romance languages. By gender, we mean that female speakers will use different words and phrases than men, and that there are some exclusively masculine words. In Japanese, it is very possible to look at written dialogue and guess whether the speaker is male or female without any verbal cues.

Counters

Japanese has a long list of counters, or words that we use to count specific items. The corresponding counter depends on the appearance or makeup of the item. For example, there are different counters for sheets of paper and bottles because they differ in shape. While English does contain some counters (think "loaf of bread" or "bottle of wine"), the range of counters in Japanese is much more extensive.

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

Omission

In English, we almost always need to state the subject in our sentences:

"Yesterday **I** went shopping at the mall, and then **I** went to Starbucks where **I** had a latte." Note that we need to state "I" for every action.

In Japanese, the writer often omits the subject from the sentence when it's understood who is doing the action. In fact, stating the subject every time will actually make your Japanese sound unnatural. The key is to only state the subject when it's absolutely necessary. In this way, Japanese lets you get straight to the important part of your sentence!

That wasn't so bad, was it? We hope this overview has given you a good idea of some of the most unique characteristics of Japanese. Keeping these in mind will give you an idea of what to look out for and will prepare you as you dive further into the world of Japanese grammar!





All About

Learn Japanese Pronunciation

4

Grammar Points

2

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

Grammar Points

Basic Japanese Pronunciation

It's often said that Japanese pronunciation is one of the easiest aspects of the language. And guess what – it's true! But it still takes some practice, and we're here to help you with it. We'll introduce you to the ins and outs of Japanese pronunciation and show you how it differs from English pronunciation.

Sounds and Syllables

Let's first take a look at how Japanese sounds work. Compared with other languages, Japanese has a relatively small set of sounds, with only fourteen consonants (k, s, t, n, h, m, y, r, w, g, z, d, b, and p) and five vowels (a, e, i, o, and u). In Japanese, there are no such words as the English word "strength," which has clusters of three or more consonants. Japanese is made up of syllables, which are made up of a consonant and a vowel. The only exceptions are the vowels and the n sound, which stand alone.

Stress

Let's think about stress in English for a moment. Try saying the words "important" and "interesting" aloud. When you say these words aloud, you're putting emphasis, or stress, on a certain syllable. In "important," the stress is on the "port" syllable. In "interesting," the stress is on the "int" syllable. If you haven't studied phonetics before, it's probably something that just comes naturally that you've never noticed! Because correct English pronunciation emphasizes certain syllables, English is known as a stress language.

Japanese, on the other hand, doesn't have stress! It's a stress-free language! (Until you start learning kanji, perhaps...) In Japanese, each syllable is held the same length of time and given equal stress. Stressing only certain syllables will sound unnatural, so keep this in mind when pronouncing Japanese.

Let's take a look at a word in Japanese and compare how it is pronounced in both Japanese and English. Let's take the word teriyaki, the name of a cooking technique where meat is marinated.

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

English pronunciation: [ter-uh-YAH-kee] Note how the third syllable is stressed.
Japanese pronunciation: [teh-ree-yah-kee] In Japanese, each syllable receives the same amount of stress.

This might sound like a lot to consider, but remember that learning good pronunciation is one of the easier aspects of learning the Japanese language!



All About

Top 5 Must Know Japanese Phrases

5

Grammar Points

2

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

Grammar Points

Top Five Must-Know Japanese Phrases

Here we'll introduce five phrases in Japanese that will take you a long way and help you out in a variety of situations!

Sumimasen (すみません) "Excuse me" / "I'm sorry" / "Thanks"

Sumimasen is a versatile phrase with a few different meanings depending on the situation, the closest of which is "excuse me." Whether you are trying to get someone's attention to ask them a question, making your way through a crowded area, or apologizing for running into someone or stepping on their foot, sumimasen is the phrase you want to use. If someone gets something for you or kindly does something for you, you can use sumimasen to thank them as well as apologize for the trouble they have gone through to help you. The correct spelling and pronunciation of this phrase is sumimasen, but quite a few people pronounce it as suimasen, omitting the first "m" sound.

Dōmo (どうも) "Thanks" / "Hi"

Dōmo is a simple and easy way to say "thank you" as well as greet someone. This phrase is more casual than using kon'nichi wa ("hello") or arigatō ("thank you"), and you can use it when these two phrases might be a little too formal for what the situation calls for. Some people use this to thank shop clerks because they think that using the formal arigatō gozaimasu ("thank you very much") might be a little too polite and out of place.

Dōzo (どうぞ) "Please go ahead" / "Please"

If you're offering something to someone or would like someone to go ahead of you or do something before you, dōzo is the phrase you are looking for. Offering your seat to someone on the train? Dōzo. Holding the door for someone and would like them to go right ahead? Dōzo. At a restaurant and someone else's food came before yours and you would like them to start eating? Dōzo. Try your hand at making some delicious o-nigiri ("rice balls") and would like to offer them to someone? Dōzo!

O-negai shimasu (お願いします) "Please"

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

You can use this handy phrase when you would like to ask for a favor or make a request of some kind. By using this phrase, you can show your appreciation in advance for the favor or request you have asked. In a business situation, it means something like "please take care of this for me." In addition to requests or favors, you can also use it to ask for tangible objects.

はい (hai) "Right" / "Yes" / "Here you go"

And now for the most compact phrase of the top five: the phrase hai. The most common translation for this word is "yes" or "right," but depending on the situation, it can also mean "here you go" if someone says it as they hand something to you. Something important to note, though, is that Japanese people often use this phrase as they are listening to show they are following what the speaker is saying - it doesn't necessarily mean they agree with or are affirming anything the speaker is saying. Just something to keep in mind to hopefully avoid any confusion!

You can also use this word when you aren't able to catch what someone is saying and you would like them to repeat what they have said. When said with rising intonation, like a question (hai?), it is the equivalent of saying, "Excuse me?" or "I'm sorry?"





All About

Think You Can Answer These 5 Questions About Japan?

6

Grammar Points

2

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

Grammar Points

How much do you really know about Japan?

Test your knowledge of Japan with this fun quiz!

This lesson will test your basic knowledge of Japan by quizzing you on five areas of knowledge: geography, pop culture, travel, economics, and myth-busting.

Questions

1) Geography Question: How many prefectures does Japan have?

- A) 50
- B) 38
- C) 47

2) Pop Culture Question: Below are the names of three popular characters that originated in Japan. Can you put them in order of their creation, from oldest to newest?

Godzilla
Pikachu
Hello Kitty

3) Travel Question: The following are popular tourist sites in Japan. Which one is not located in Tokyo?

- A) Tsukiji fish market
- B) Mt. Fuji
- C) The Imperial Palace

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

4) Economic Question: Where does Japan's economy fall in the ranking of world economies?

5) Debunking a Myth About Japan Question: True/False: Japan's main staple diet is sushi.

Answers

1) Geography Question: How many prefectures does Japan have?

The answer is C) 47. Japan has forty-seven prefectures, the largest of which is the northernmost prefecture, Hokkaido, and the most populous of which is the country's capital, Tokyo.

2) Pop Culture Question: Below are the names of three popular characters that originated in Japan. Can you put them in order of their creation, from oldest to newest?

Answer: The correct order is Godzilla (1954), Hello Kitty (1974), and Pikachu (1995). All three characters have accumulated a large fan following not only in Japan but also around the world.

3) Travel Question: The following are popular tourist sites in Japan. Which one is not located in Tokyo?

The answer is B) Mt. Fuji. While Mt. Fuji is visible from Tokyo on a clear day, it is actually located 100 km/60 miles away, on the border of Shizuoka and Yamanashi prefectures.

4) Economic Question: Where does Japan's economy fall in the rankings of world economies?

The answer is #2. Japan's economy is the second largest in the world after that of

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

the United States.

5) Debunking a Myth About Japan Question: True/False: Japan's main staple diet is sushi.

The answer is false! Many people think of sushi when they think of Japanese food, but the truth is that this food is more of a delicacy than anything else. You won't find many people who eat sushi every day or even on a regular basis. The main staple food in Japan is rice, which the Japanese eat with almost every meal.



All About

Top 5 Japanese Dishes You Have to Try and Top 5 Dishes for the Really
Brave!

7

Grammar Points

2

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

Grammar Points

All About Japanese Food

What comes to your mind when you think of Japanese food? Sushi, perhaps? Rolls containing various kinds of seafood and vegetables stuffed inside? Well, while you might find lots of sushi and rolls in Japan, they are merely the tip of the iceberg when it comes to Japanese cuisine – there is a whole lot more for you to discover!

Table Etiquette

Before we go on to the food, let's first talk about Japanese table etiquette. Before eating, it is customary to say itadakimasu, which means, "I will humbly receive," as a way to show gratitude for the meal.

When using chopsticks, it is important to remember a few things to avoid being rude. Don't stab your chopsticks into your rice and leave them there, and never pass food with your chopsticks directly to someone else's chopsticks, as both of these actions are related to funeral traditions.

When eating and drinking in a big group, wait for others to pour your drink for you, and then return the favor when you see someone's glass getting low.

In some Asian countries, such as Korea, it is unacceptable to pick up your rice bowl when eating, but in Japan, this is very common.

Regional Dishes

One of the most interesting aspects of Japanese cuisine is its vast array of regional delicacies. Each area of Japan boasts its own selection of specialty dishes that have become closely associated with that area. It is not uncommon for Japanese people from all over Japan to travel hundreds or even thousands of miles to try the different specialties in the place that they originally come from.

One of the most famous examples of regional cuisine is okonomiyaki, which is a flat, pancake-shaped food. Cooked on a hot plate, okonomiyaki usually contains chopped cabbage, meat, and seafood. However, because the name contains the word okonomi, meaning "to one's liking," it is up to you to decide what goes into your

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

okonomiyaki. Cheese, mochi, and even Korean kimchee ("pickled vegetables") are among some of the most popular additions to okonomiyaki. There are two regional variations of okonomiyaki: Osaka style and Hiroshima style. In Osaka style, which is considered the dominant style that you'll find all over Japan, the chef mixes all the ingredients together before transferring them to the hot plate. There, the chef cooks it and then tops it with dried seaweed, dried bonito, or fish flakes, and a thick okonomiyaki sauce. On the other hand, in Hiroshima style, the chef layers the ingredients one-by-one instead of mixing them together. It is very common to add noodles, and the amount of cabbage is anywhere from three to four times the amount usually used in Osaka-style okonomiyaki.

Other popular regional dishes include gōya chanpuru, a stir-fried dish containing gōya, a very bitter gourd, from Okinawa; wanko soba, buckwheat noodles from Iwate served in bite-served portions that keep coming until you say stop; basashi, raw horse meat, from Kumamoto; gyūtan, cow tongue, from Miyagi, and much, much more. If you have a chance to visit Japan, definitely try some of the local specialties!

Popular Dishes

Some of the most popular dishes in Japan are usually quite different from what people might imagine. If you were to look at the average Japanese person's lunch, what would you find? The most common Japanese lunch is the bentō. Bentō refers to a meal served in a box that is either prepared at home or bought at restaurants and convenience stores. Anything goes when it comes to the contents of a bentō, although white rice, fish, and vegetables are common elements found in many bentō. Visually, bentō range from very simple to elaborately arranged. There is even a kind of bentō called kyaraben, short for character bentō, where the food is arranged and decorated to look like people, animals, popular characters, and so on.

Other everyday Japanese foods include o-nigiri, rice balls wrapped in seaweed with various fillings; curry, usually containing potatoes, carrots, onions, and served together with white rice; karaage, Japanese-style fried meat, usually chicken; rāmen, a Japanese noodle dish that originated in China; and more.

Seasonal Dishes

The Japanese really love their seasons, and they especially love eating the different dishes associated with each season. When the cold weather sets in in the winter, people line up to eat nabe and oden, which are both hot stew-like dishes. Nabe is a hot pot that consists of a stew with assorted meats and vegetables. The host usually places the pot in the center of the table so many people can share it. Oden, on the other hand, is an assortment of vegetables and meat stewed in a

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

light, soy-flavored broth. Common ingredients found in oden are daikon radish, boiled eggs, meat skewers, and fish cakes. You can purchase even oden at convenience stores, where you can pick and choose what goes into your oden.

In spring, along with the sakura ("cherry blossoms"), comes sakura no shiozuke ("salted cherry blossoms") and leaves that chefs use in various ways in Japanese cuisine, the most commonplace being sakura-mochi. Sakura-mochi is mochi, a sticky rice cake, wrapped in a salted sakura leaf and topped with a salted cherry blossom. The sweltering heat in the summer accounts for the popularity of cold dishes such as hiyashi sōmen, ("chilled wheat noodles"), and kakigōri, ("shaved ice"). In fall, kuri, known as chestnuts, come into season and chefs use them in many dishes, such as kuri go-han, which is cooked rice with sweet chestnuts.

Top Five Foods to Try in Japan

Sushi

Sushi is probably the most famous Japanese food. Make your way to Tsukiji Fish Market, one of the largest fish markets in the world, for some of the freshest sushi around. For a unique sushi experience, try kaiten zushi, which also known as conveyor belt sushi. In kaiten zushi restaurants, the chefs place plates of sushi on a rotating conveyor belt that makes its way through the restaurant, moving past every table and seat. Customers are free to pick and choose the sushi they want off the conveyor belt, although they can also place special orders.

Soba and udon

Soba, buckwheat noodles, and udon, thick noodles made from wheat, are two of the most popular types of Japanese noodles. You can serve both hot or cold, and there are many different varieties in different regions of Japan.

Tōfu

Let's face it; tofu doesn't have the best reputation in the West. Even if you aren't crazy about tofu or just can't shake its bland, flavorless image, you're sure to find a tōfu recipe that will make you reconsider this Japanese delicacy. In Japan, there are innumerable ways to prepare tofu that give it tons of flavor. Some of the most popular include agedashi-dōfu ("deep-fried tofu"), mabō dōfu ("spicy tōfu," originally from China), and the aforementioned gōya champuru, a dish from Okinawa made with gōya and tōfu.

Shabushabu

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

Shabushabu is a dish that uses thin slices of meat dipped in boiling water or broth, which you then dip into a flavored sauce and eat. This dish is usually served with tōfu and vegetables.

Rāmen

Rāmen is a Japanese noodle dish that has its roots in China. It consists of a meaty broth, noodles, shredded meat, and vegetables. Rāmen shops are located all over Japan, with many regional variations available. Some of the most popular rāmen flavors are miso (a paste made from fermented soybeans), shōyu ("soy sauce"), shio ("salt"), and tonkotsu ("pork bone").

Top Five Foods for the Brave

Nattō

Nattō is a traditional food made from fermented soybeans, infamous for its bad smell and sticky consistency. So infamous, in fact, that one question Japanese people are sure to ask you is whether or not you have tried nattō. Nattō is usually eaten as a topping on rice.

Nama tamago

Nama tamago, or raw egg, shows up in a variety of Japanese dishes, including the popular favorites sukiyaki, where you dip meat into a bowl of raw egg before you eat it, and tamago kake go-han, cooked rice mixed with raw egg and a little bit of soy sauce.

Shiokara

Shiokara is Japanese fermented seafood that has a very strong flavor and is quite salty. It is definitely an acquired taste, even for many native Japanese people.

Reba-sashi

Reba-sashi is short for rebā sashimi, which is "raw liver." You can usually find this at yakiniku (Korean barbeque) restaurants in Japan.

Kusaya

Kusaya is a Japanese style salted-dried fish. The name comes from the word kusai, which literally means, "smells bad." You make kusaya by soaking fish into a "kusaya gravy" (that is used over and over again) and then leave it to dry in the sun. The smell of kusaya is very strong, but the taste is relatively mellow. While it is fairly well-known because of its bad smell, even among Japanese people, few have actually tried it.

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts





All About

Top 5 things you need to know about Japanese Society

8

Grammar Points

2

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

Grammar Points

All About Japanese Society

Japanese society is a very broad topic and is hard to summarize in a single lesson. That's why we're narrowing it down to its top five most important aspects!

Major Cities of Japan

Tokyo is the capital of Japan and the largest city in the country. Tokyo is also one of Japan's forty-seven prefectures, but it is referred to as a to ("a metropolis") instead of a ken ("a prefecture"). The metropolis of Tokyo is made up of twenty-three ku ("city wards"), twenty-six cities, five towns, and eight villages, as well as numerous small Pacific islands.

The name Tokyo means "the Eastern Capital," and it became the capital of Japan during the nineteenth century when its name changed from Edo to Tokyo. As of 2007, the population of the city of Tokyo is estimated to be about 12.8 million people. The Greater Tokyo area, which is made up of Tokyo and surrounding prefectures Chiba, Kanagawa, and Saitama, has an estimated population of 35.6 million people. Because of the large number of people living in Tokyo, downtown Tokyo is often very crowded and busy, especially in and around major commuting areas like train stations.

Shinjuku, one of the twenty-three special wards of Tokyo, is a major commercial and administrative center, and most consider it the heart of downtown Tokyo. It is home to the busiest train station in the world, Shinjuku Station, and the Tokyo Metropolitan Government Building, the administration center for the government of Tokyo.

There is no shortage of things to do and see in Tokyo. From the numerous museums and famous zoo in Ueno to the fancy high-end stores and restaurants in Ginza to the throng of discount electronics stores in Akihabara, each neighborhood offers something different and unique. Whether you're visiting Tokyo as a tourist or making a life there, you're sure never to get bored.

Kyoto, one of the oldest cities in Japan, was formerly the capital of Japan until

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

1868, when Tokyo became the capital. Now it is a major city in the Kansai area, known for its traditional atmosphere with its numerous temples and shrines. Thousands of tourists come from all over the world to visit these temples and shrines, especially in spring to see the cherry blossoms and in autumn to see the leaves change color.

Osaka is a large city that is located in the Kansai area close to Kyoto. It is the capital of Osaka prefecture as well as the economic and cultural center of the Kansai region. People from Osaka are characterized as friendly with a good sense of humor. Many famous Japanese comedians hail from Osaka. Older women in Osaka especially are known for being bright and full of energy, as well as good at bargaining. Osaka also boasts regional specialties, among them okonomiyaki, a pancake-like dish containing a variety of ingredients cooked on a hot plate, and takoyaki, fried dumplings with small pieces of octopus inside.

Family Life

Families in Japan are generally traditional, and the family is a focal point of life. Immediate families are a bit smaller compared to those of other countries; it is not uncommon for Japanese parents to have only one or two children. It was very common for three generations (children, parents, and grandparents) to live together in the same household; however, lately you can see a trend toward nuclear families in larger cities. It is also very common for adult children to continue to live with their parents well into their twenties or thirties until they get married. Japanese gender roles are still quite traditional, with women expected to stay home and take care of their children and men expected to support the family financially. However, this is also slowly changing, with the number of working mothers and stay-at-home dads slowly increasing.

A few problems have recently plagued Japanese family life and society. One of them is the decreasing birthrate, which hit a record low in 2005 when the number of deaths outnumbered the number of births. If this trend continues, Japan's population will start shrinking. Many factors are contributing to this problem, with the delay in marriage being one of the major ones. More and more men and women are waiting until they are older to get married, with the number of single people in their thirties and forties increasing steadily every year. Another problem is the lack of support and benefits for parents with children, which makes the decision to have children an undesirable one in the eyes of young people.

Work Culture and Economy

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

Japan's economy is ranked second in the world after that of the United States, and some of its main industries include motor vehicles, electronics, industrial and transportation equipment, and chemicals. Some major, well-known Japanese companies include Sony, Mitsubishi, Toyota, and Honda.

In Japan, the dominant work culture is quite rigid. Employees in their first years at a company often have to work long hours for little pay. Working overtime, which is often unpaid, is an everyday occurrence at Japanese companies. The hierarchy in Japanese companies is very strict as well, with relationships following a rigid system based on seniority. Companies require subordinates to address their superiors formally and treat them with respect. It is very common for employees to all go out drinking together after a long day at work; the Japanese see this as a way to strengthen relationships and build work camaraderie. There are some disadvantages to the seniority system, however. When managers promote employees, they focus more on age and the amount of the time the person has worked at the company rather than individual accomplishments and achievements.

Another important part of the Japanese work economy is the custom of lifelong employment. This system, however, is becoming less common due to a decrease in the number of full-time employees and an increase in the number of part-time and contractual employees. There is even a term, *freeter*, the Japanese have coined to refer to young people who work one or more part-time jobs as an alternative to obtaining full-time employment. *Freeters* cite a flexible schedule and the ability to take more time off with relative ease as advantages to working part-time jobs.

Politics

Japan is a parliamentary monarchy governed by a Prime Minister and his cabinet. The bicameral parliament is called the Diet and is made up of the upper House of Councillors and the lower House of Representatives. The lower House holds most of the power. The Japanese people elect members of the Japanese Diet, who in turn elect the Prime Minister of Japan. Japan has a figurehead Emperor whose role is mostly symbolic and traditional; he possesses no political power.

Unlike the United States or the United Kingdom, Japanese political parties tend to change constantly with one major exception—the Liberal Democratic Party, which has held power for more than fifty years—since the end of World War II. The second and third most popular parties at the moment are the *Kōmeitō*, the Clean Government Party (CGP), and the newly founded *Minshutō*, the Democratic Party of Japan (DPJ).

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

Generational Trends

Generally speaking, the older and younger generations tend to do things differently and hold different ideas about things. The older generation tends to have a strong sense of loyalty to their companies and place work high on their priority lists, even above family. The younger generation, however, is not averse to changing jobs if there is something they are dissatisfied with, and as mentioned before, many see no problem with not pursuing full-time employment. Members of the younger generation also seem to keep more of their own interests in mind as they wait longer and longer to get married and have children. Many members of the older generation view these trends of young people today as signs that they are selfish and fickle. As attitudes continue to change, it will be interesting to see in what ways Japanese culture and society change along with them.





All About

Top 5 Important Dates in Japan

9

Grammar Points

2

Grammar Points

The Five Most Important Holidays in Japan

Japan has many different holidays that carry a lot of meaning and have years of tradition behind them. Here we'll introduce the top five most important holidays in Japan, going in reverse order starting with number five.

The fifth most important holiday in Japan is Seijin no Hi, or "Coming-of-Age Day." On this day, people who turn twenty during the current school year, which runs between April until the following March, celebrate their coming of age. In Japan, when people turn twenty, society legally recognizes them as an adult, and they are able to drink alcohol and vote. The festival was created as a Japanese national holiday in 1947 when it was set to January 15th. However, this holiday was moved to the second Monday in January in 1999 as a result of the "Happy Monday System," the Japanese government's decision to move more holidays to Monday to create a three-day weekend for those who normally have a five-day workweek.

2 On this day, local city halls and community centers hold small ceremonies in the morning. Government officials give speeches and hand out small gifts to the people in attendance who are turning twenty. It is customary for girls to wear furisode kimono, which are kimono that have sleeves much longer than those of regular kimono, and put their hair up in fancy hairstyles. Because the furisode kimono are very elaborate and hard to put on, many girls go to a beauty salon to get professional help with their kimono and hair. On this day, most men wear fancy suits, although you will sometimes see men wearing dark-colored kimono. Families with someone who is turning twenty will often cook and eat red bean rice, known as sekihan.

The fourth most important holiday (or in this case, group of holidays) in Japan is Golden Week. Golden Week refers to the period in late April and early May that contains many Japanese national holidays grouped closely together.

The first holiday of Golden Week falls on April 29th and is called Shōwa no Hi (昭和の日) "Showa Day," which was the birthday of the former emperor Showa. The second holiday is Kenpō Kinenbi (憲法記念日), or "Constitution Memorial Day,"

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

which is held on May 3rd. The new Japanese constitution went into effect in 1947 on this day. Next comes Midori no Hi (みどりの日), which is "Greenery Day" or "Nature Day" on May 4th, during which the Japanese celebrate nature. The last holiday during Golden Week is Kodomo no Hi (こどもの日), or "Children's Day," which falls on May 5th. On this day, parents pray for a happy and healthy life for their children.

Many Japanese people will take paid time off on the intervening workdays, but it is not uncommon for some companies to close down completely and give their employees the entire week (and sometimes more) off. During this time, many people take a vacation and travel around the country or go abroad. As a result, airports and train stations become very crowded, plane ticket fees increase dramatically, and accommodation reservations become very hard to get, even in advance.

The third most important holiday in Japan is O-bon. O-bon is a Buddhist event where people pray for the repose of their ancestors' souls and remember the deceased. If you are familiar with Mexico's Day of the Dead festival, O-bon is quite similar. O-bon takes place from the 13th to the 16th of August (celebrated from July 13-15 in some areas). During this time, Japanese people return to ancestral family places, and visit and clean their ancestors' graves. The Japanese believe that during this time, the ancestors' spirits return to this world to visit their relatives.

Traditionally, the Japanese perform o-bon dances, known as bon odori, visit graves, and make food offerings at house altars and temples. Bon odori is the most common custom during O-bon. People wearing yukata (a light kimono worn in summer) go to the neighborhood bon odori and dance around a stage. When O-bon comes to an end, floating lanterns (known as *tōrō nagashi*) are put into rivers, lakes, and seas to guide the spirits back to their world.

The exact customs of O-bon vary widely from region to region throughout Japan. One of the most famous O-bon traditions takes place in Kyoto and is known as Gozan no Okuribi or Daimonji no Okuribi. On the night of August 16th, at the end of the festival, fires are lit on the five mountains that surround Kyoto to send the visiting spirits back to the netherworld. The Japanese light Chinese characters and Buddhist-related markings etched into the side of the mountains on fire in this amazing display that marks the end of O-bon.

The second most important holiday in Japan is *Ōmisoka*, which is New Year's Eve. This day is very symbolic in Japan as it is the last day of the year and the day

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

before New Year's Day, the most important day of the year. **Ōmisoka** is usually accompanied by a big cleaning known as **Ōsōji** (大掃除), which literally means "big cleaning," and is comparable to the concept of "spring cleaning." Many Japanese people use this opportunity to clear out clutter from the old year and tidy up their homes and offices for the start of the new year.

For dinner on **Ōmisoka**, many people like to have a bowl of toshikoshi soba (New Year's Eve Soba, a type of Japanese noodle). This tradition comes from the association of the long noodles with the wish of "living a long, healthy life."

Another popular event that takes place on **Ōmisoka** is the television show **Kōhaku Uta Gassen**, the "Red vs. White Singing Contest," which airs on public television station NHK and starts at 7:30 PM and goes until 11:45 PM. Popular singers and groups split into two teams, with women making up the red team and men making up the white team. A panel of judges casts votes to decide which team performed better, and the judges declare one side the winner at the end of the broadcast.

The most important holiday in Japan is **Ō-shōgatsu** (お正月) or **Gantan** (元旦), which is New Year's Day. Many people spend time with their families, and people who work or live far from their families often go back to their hometown for New Year's.

The time around New Year's Day is a time for many "firsts." It's customary to visit a shrine or temple for **hatsu-mōde**, the first shrine/temple visit of the year, although many people go at some point during the first week of the new year instead of on New Year's Day. Some people even go up to the mountains or drive to the coast so they can see the first sunrise of the New Year, known as **hatsu-hinode**. The first dream you have once the New Year starts is referred to as **hatsu-yume**, whose contents are traditionally said to foretell the dreamer's luck in the ensuing year.

Many different types of special foods are eaten on New Year's Day or on the surrounding days. The most famous is known as **Ō-sechi**, a variety of traditional Japanese New Year cuisine that has been around since the Heian Period (794-1185). Many families prepare their own **ō-sechi** at home, but many families also buy pre-made **ō-sechi** from a supermarket or a department store. Each dish in **ō-sechi** has its own special meaning. Here are some examples:

1. **kinton** (金団), "sweet potato and chestnut," symbolizes wealth.
2. **kazunoko** (数の子), "salted herring roe," symbolizes a wish to have more

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

- children in the New Year. kazu (数) means "number" and ko (子) means "child."
- kuromame (黒豆), "sweet black beans," symbolize a wish for health in the New Year. Mame, which means "bean," also has the meaning of "diligence" and "health."
 - datemaki (伊達巻), "a sweet omelet mixed with fish paste or mashed shrimp," symbolizes a wish for many auspicious days.
 - tai (鯛), "sea bream," symbolizes an auspicious event.
 - kobumaki (こぶまき), "rolled kelp with fish," symbolizes joy.
 - tazukuri (田作り), "small, dried sardines cooked in soy sauce," symbolize an abundant harvest.

While not a part of o-sechi, the Japanese also eat o-zōni (お雑煮), a soup containing mochi rice cakes, around New Year's. In the eastern part of Japan, the soup of o-zōni is usually clear, and in the western part of Japan, miso soup is more common.

On New Year's Day, there is a custom of parents and relatives giving money to their children. The money they give is known as o-toshidama, and in most cases, they place it in special little envelopes called o-toshidama bukuro. Another custom is the act of sending New Year's greeting postcards known as nengajō. This tradition is similar to the act of giving Christmas cards in the West, although nengajō have no religious significance. The Japanese often decorate nengajō with the present year's Chinese zodiac sign. The Chinese zodiac has a cycle of twelve years, each of which is represented by an animal. The post office stocks all of the nengajō mailed in late December and delivers them all at once on January 1st. Unlike Christmas cards, which can be mailed early, nengajō shouldn't arrive before New Year's Day.



All About

All About Japanese # 10 - All About Japanese Pop Culture

10

Grammar Points

2

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

Grammar Points

All About Japanese Pop Culture

Japan is a country rich in pop culture that has started to gain recognition and popularity throughout the world. As popular culture changes quickly and drastically, we focus this lesson on the most recent pop culture. Please keep in mind that we wrote this lesson in 2009.

Popular Music

You might be surprised to learn that Japan boasts the second largest music industry in the world after the United States. Pop music is especially popular in Japan, although you can find all sorts of music in Japan done by Japanese artists—including rock, rap, hip-hop, reggae, and more.

Two groups in Japan that have enjoyed long-standing success are Dreams Come True and Southern All Stars. Dreams Come True is a duo made up of a vocalist and a bassist that has been around for over twenty years and spawned dozens of hit songs. Southern All Stars is composed of five members, two of which are husband and wife. They have enjoyed success with numerous top-ten singles and sixteen number one albums.

When it comes to female pop acts, three big names come to mind: Ayumi Hamasaki, Namie Amuro, and Hikaru Utada. Ayumi Hamasaki broke into the Japanese music scene with million-selling albums in the late '90s and has remained a huge seller ever since. Her musical as well as fashion style seem to change with every record she releases, and many view her as a fashion leader, with many young girls copying her style. Namie Amuro became popular around the same time in the '90s as Ayumi Hamasaki. Namie Amuro is known not only for her strong singing voice, but also for her fast, high-energy dance moves that she pulls off while singing. Hikaru Utada debuted in Japan in 1999 when she was fifteen years old. Raised in both Japan and the United States, Utada is bilingual in both English and Japanese, and she records songs in both languages. Her debut album, *First Love*, is the highest-selling album in Japanese history, selling over seven million copies in Japan alone.

When it comes to male pop acts, a majority of them come from a talent agency known

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

as Johnny's Entertainment, which trains and promotes male idol groups in Japan. Members of groups that belong to Johnny's Entertainment are known for being able to not only sing but also dance and act, making them well-rounded performers. Among the most popular groups are SMAP, V6, Arashi, and Kinki Kids, with SMAP being the most recognizable. All five members of SMAP have become huge celebrities in their own rights, hosting their own TV and radio shows, regularly appearing in advertisements, and acting in numerous television shows and movies.

Popular Movies

Both imported Hollywood movies and domestic Japanese movies enjoy great popularity in Japan. Hollywood blockbusters such as Pirates of the Caribbean, the Harry Potter series, and the Spiderman series drew millions of moviegoers to theaters around the country. Recently, however, the popularity of domestic Japanese movies has been on the rise, with the annual box-office revenue for domestic movies hitting an all-time high in 2008.

Of the top Japanese films of 2008, the highest-grossing title was the animation film Gake no Ue no Ponyo ("Ponyo on the Cliff by the Sea"), which world-renowned animator Hayao Miyazaki directed. Hayao Miyazaki is very well-known not only in Japan but throughout the world for his collection of animated masterpieces he makes through his production company Studio Ghibli. Some of his famous works include films such as My Neighbor Totoro, Kiki's Delivery Service, Princess Mononoke, and Spirited Away, which was the first anime film to win an Academy Award.

Popular Television

When it comes to Japanese television, some of the most popular genres are ones you won't often see abroad. This is especially true of the variety genre. Variety shows, true to their name, feature a variety of different content-cooking segments, comedy segments, skits, and quizzes are just some of what you'll find on a typical Japanese variety show. Variety shows often feature a large panel of currently popular celebrities and sometimes a studio audience.

Quiz shows that feature contestants (who are almost always celebrities) answering questions on numerous subjects, such as science, history, math, the Japanese language, pop culture, and so on, also enjoy great popularity. Reality shows that have experienced a surge in popularity in the West are almost nonexistent.

Japanese dramas are also very popular among Japanese people of all ages. Japanese dramas follow a quarter system, which means a majority of dramas only run for one season for an average of ten to twelve episodes. Unlike in the West, once a drama

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

finishes its initial run, it ends for good. Especially popular dramas may come back for a second season or more, but this is not common. Many current dramas' running in Japan are adaptations of popular movies, comics, or animated shows. At the same time, foreign-made dramas enjoy their fair share of popularity. Television networks broadcast titles such as 24, Prison Break, Lost, and Heroes and are widely available for rental at video stores around the country.

Popular Foreigners in Japan

There are many recognizable foreigners in Japan. Alongside the major movie stars and celebrities known all over the world are a handful of foreigners widely known in Japan yet virtually unknown in their home country.

One foreigner who has recently become a big hit in Japan goes by the name of Jero. His real name is Jerome White, Jr., and he is an African-American singer who was born and raised in Pittsburgh, Pennsylvania. He has gained popularity singing enka, a traditional type of pop music that is especially popular among older people. The unique combination of Jero's background and age (twenty-six at the time of his debut) and the traditional Japanese music that he sings has drawn a lot of attention from the Japanese public and media.

In recent years, Japan has experienced a boom in the popularity of Korean entertainment, known as hanryū. It all started with the wildly popular Korean drama Fuyu no Sonata, which aired on NHK, Nippon Hōsō Kyōkai, the Japan Broadcasting Corporation, in 2004. This drama started a Korean entertainment phenomenon and made big stars out of the two leading actors, Bae Yong Joon and Choi Ji Woo. This has led to an influx of Korean entertainers in Japan, such as chart-topping boy band Tōhōshinki, male solo artist Ryu Siwon, and many more.

Foreigners have also made an impact in the world of Japanese sports. Two notable examples in the sumo world are Kotoōshu (from Bulgaria) and Asashōryū (from Mongolia). Both have drawn a lot of attention as foreigners who participate in the traditional sport of sumo.

Popular Japanese Men/Women Abroad

Quite a few Japanese people have made a name for themselves abroad through the world of entertainment, literature, and fashion.

Actor Ken Watanabe became a recognized name after appearing alongside Tom Cruise in the 2003 war film The Last Samurai. Takeshi Kitano gained worldwide attention as a filmmaker with the extraordinary success Hanabi, a film that went on to win

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

numerous international awards.

Author Haruki Murakami is one of the most recognized names when it comes to contemporary Japanese literature. His works have been translated into thirty-four languages, and his stories have earned him acclaim and several awards, including the Yomiuri Prize and the Franz Kafka Prize.

Issey Miyake is the most well-known Japanese designer in the world, and he is considered the first Asian designer to gain worldwide recognition. Born in Hiroshima in 1938, he established the Miyake Design Studio in 1970 and started showing his clothing lines at the Paris collections in 1973. He is known for his designs that combine textile designs of the East with production methods and modern technology of the West. Today, you can purchase Issey Miyake's designs all around the world.

Popular Sports Figures

Baseball is arguably the most popular sport in Japan. The United States introduced baseball, or *yakyū*, as the Japanese know it, during the early Meiji Period. One of the most popular names of the Japanese baseball world both in Japan and abroad is Ichiro Suzuki. Ichiro Suzuki joined the Seattle Mariners in 2000, a move that many watched with great interest, as he was the first Japanese position player to play regularly for a Major League Baseball team. Other familiar names in baseball include Hideki Matsui, who plays for the New York Yankees, and Daisuke Matsuzaka, who plays for the Boston Red Sox.

In the figure skating world, Shizuka Arakawa made headlines when she received a gold medal in the 2006 Winter Olympics, a first in the event for a Japanese skater. These days a lot of global attention is on Mao Asada, who currently ranks third in the world in the International Skating Union World Standings for women.



All About

All About Japanese #11 - Top Five Tools for Learning Japanese

11

Grammar Points

2

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

Grammar Points

Top Five Tools for Learning Japanese

The focus of this lesson is to suggest the top five useful tools you can use to learn Japanese.

Some great tools to aid you in your Japanese studies include the following:

1. Rikaichan

Rikaichan is a popup dictionary extension for the Firefox Internet browser that translates Japanese into English, German, French, or Russian. With this extension installed, you can easily look up the meaning of Japanese words that show up on webpages by simply hovering the cursor over the word. A box will instantly pop up with the reading and definition of the word. Rikaichan is very easy to use and is a must when navigating Japanese webpages.

Link: Rikaichan website: <http://www.polarcloud.com/rikaichan/>

2. Rikaichan Kanji Dictionary

Rikaichan not only translates words, but also gives you detailed information on kanji. Hover the cursor over any kanji, whether it is part of a compound or by itself, and press the Shift or Enter key to toggle between the word, kanji, and name dictionaries. The kanji dictionary gives detailed information that include the kanji's meaning, all possible readings, radicals that make up the kanji, number of strokes, and more. This kanji dictionary is a part of the Rikaichan add-on mentioned above, so there's no need for a separate program.

Link: Rikaichan website: <http://www.polarcloud.com/rikaichan/>

3. Eijiro Dictionary

Eijiro is an English-Japanese/Japanese-English dictionary with an extensive database of translations and sample sentences. A group of professional translators put it together and continue to update it regularly. As a result, Eijiro contains a huge number of difficult and obscure terms, colloquial expressions, and technical terms. You can buy Eijiro online at the ALC Online Shop website in the form of a CD-R or a downloadable dictionary file, and a free online version of

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

Eijiro is available through the SpaceALC Japanese website portal.

Links: ALC Online Shop: <http://shop.alc.co.jp/top/>

SpaceALC (free online version of Eijiro): <http://www.alc.co.jp/>

4. Anki

Anki is a flash card program that lets you review vocabulary, kanji, or both! This program is based on a theory called spaced repetition, which means it presents the learner with flash cards at certain calculated intervals. This system is based on research that shows that when you repeat new material to learn it, the interval at which you repeat it makes a big difference. The flash card system in Anki is very flexible and customizable, making it a great tool for learning and retaining vocabulary and kanji.

Link: Anki website: <http://ichi2.net/anki/index.html>

5. Lang-8

Lang-8 is a Social Networking Service (SNS) created for the purpose of language exchange and international communication. Once you register, which is free, you can write a journal entry in the language you are studying, and other users who are native speakers of that language can correct your entry. In turn, you can also correct the journal entries of those who are studying your native language. Many people studying Japanese use Lang-8 to have native speakers correct their journal entries written in Japanese. Even if you are just getting started with Japanese, this is a good way to practice reading and writing in Japanese as well as receive valuable feedback!

Link: Lang-8: <http://www.lang-8.com/>



All About

Top 5 Classroom Phrases in Japanese

12

Grammar Points

2

Grammar Points

Top 5 Classroom Phrases in Japanese

In this lesson, we'll teach you the top five useful classroom phrases in Japanese, and then some!

1. "Please say it." / "Please repeat."

Itte kudasai (言ってください) means "please say it." As a variation, you might also hear ripito shite kudasai (リピートしてください), which means "please repeat (after me)," when teachers want you to repeat exactly what they have said.

2. "Please look."

Mite kudasai (みてください) means "please look," and when an object comes before the phrase, it means "please look at (object)." For example, howaito bōdo, mite kudasai (ホワイトボード、みてください) means "please look at the whiteboard".

3. "Please read."

Yonde kudasai (読んでください) means "please read."

You can expect to hear this phrase if a teacher wants you to practice reading some word, phrase, or passage. For example, tekisuto, yonde kudasai (テキスト、読んでください) means "please read your textbook".

4. "Please write it."

Kaite kudasai (書いてください) means "please write it."

Teachers may use this phrase when they want you to practice writing some hiragana, katakana, or even kanji!

5. "Do you understand?"

The most direct translation is wakarimasu ka? (わかりますか?).

Other variations Japanese teachers often use include daijōbu desu ka?

(大丈夫ですか?) and ii desu ka? (いいですか?), which both literally translate to "Is it/everything okay?" Teachers often use these questions to confirm understanding. If teachers want to ask whether there are any questions, they might also ask shitsumon arimasu ka? (質問ありますか?), which means "Are there any questions?"



All About

All About Japanese #13 - Top Five Phrases Your Teacher Might Never Teach You

13

Grammar Points

2

Grammar Points

Top Five Phrases Your Teacher Might Never Teach You

The focus of this lesson is teaching you some very common Japanese expressions you might not learn from a Japanese teacher.

1. **すごい**

(Sugoi)

Sugoi is an adjective meaning "wow," "amazing," or "great." This word is commonly heard and is often used when one hears or sees something interesting or unusual.

2. **バカ**

(Baka)

Baka is a noun meaning "idiot" or "fool." When used as baka na (バカな), it becomes an adjective meaning "stupid." This word can either be insulting or playful depending on how it is used. When used in a serious manner, it can come across as a strong insult, so it's better to exercise caution with this word. When used as a joke among friends, it can come off as playful.

3. **うそ!**

(Uso!)

Uso literally means "lie," but when used as an exclamation, it corresponds to "No way!" or "Really!?" in English. If someone says this in response to something you have said, don't worry - they're not calling you a liar, but rather expressing surprise or disbelief.

4. Words used by young people:

超

(Chō)

Chō is a slangy adverb that usually comes before adjectives to emphasize them, making this word the equivalent of "very," "so," or "really." For example, muzukashii means "difficult," so chō muzukashii would mean "really difficult," or "so difficult."

やばい

(Yabai)

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

Yabai is a very slangy word that has a few different meanings. When used as an exclamation (yabai!), it usually indicates that something is wrong and roughly means "oh no!" or "shoot!" When used to describe something, it can have both a good meaning and a bad meaning depending on the context. For example, Kono eiga wa yabai! ("This movie is yabai!") could either mean that the movie was great or that it was bad.

マジ

(Maji)

Maji is similar to chō in that it often comes before adjectives to emphasize them. When used as "maji de?!" (マジで?!), it becomes an exclamation meaning "Really?!" or "Are you serious?!"

すげー

(Sugē)

Sugē is a colloquial version of the above-mentioned sugoi. In young people's speech (and particularly in young male speech), the "-oi" and "-ai" word endings turn into an "eh" sound.

5. あいづち

Aizuchi are frequent interjections listeners make during a Japanese conversation that show the listener is paying attention to and understanding the speaker. Some common ones include:

そうそう／だよね～

(Sō sō / Da yo ne~)

"Yeah" or "I know~" (expressing agreement)

うんうん

(un un)

"Okay" or "Yeah". Sometimes used just to show that you are listening.

へえー

(Hē)

"Whoa!" or "Oh!". This is often used to show that you are impressed or that you didn't know something.



All About

All About Japanese #14 - Top Five Tips for Avoiding Common Mistakes in Japanese

14

Grammar Points

2

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

Grammar Points

Top Five Tips for Avoiding Common Mistakes in Japanese

In this lesson, we'll offer tips to help you overcome some common errors that learners of Japanese make.

Tip #1:

[Don't Attach -san to Your Own Name!](#)

One of the first things English speakers learn in Japanese is name suffixes used when addressing other people. The most common one is -san, which we attach to people's first or last names to show respect. We learn someone whose last name is Tanaka is always referred to as Tanaka-san, someone whose last name is Saito becomes Saito-san, and so on.

In a classroom setting, teachers refer to students using -san as well, such as John-san, or Sarah-san. When it comes time to introduce themselves, it is common for students to slip-up and refer to themselves with -san attached to their names. Because we use -san to show respect for others, you should never use it to refer to yourself.

Correct:

○ 私はジョンです。
(Watashi wa John desu.)
"I'm John."

Incorrect:

× 私はジョンさんです。
(Watashi wa John-san desu.)

Tip #2:

[Watch Your Politeness Level!](#)

One of the unique aspects of Japanese is the varying politeness levels that change according to a number of factors: age and status of the speaker and listener, the

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

speaker's relationship with the listener, and so on. Learners of Japanese are generally taught the formal speech style first, followed by a more casual, informal speech style. It is important to remember to speak formally to one's teachers, elders, and anyone else who falls under the category of senpai, those who are of higher status. Learners who learn the informal speech style first, or who spend a lot of time speaking informally with friends, might have trouble switching back to formal speech.

Correct usage to a superior:

○ 昼ごはん、食べましたか?

(Hirugohan, tabemashita ka?)

"Did you eat lunch?" (formal)

Incorrect usage to a superior:

× 昼ごはん、食べた?

(Hirugohan, tabeta?)

"Did you eat lunch?" (informal)

Tip #3:

[Watch Your Gender!](#)

In the Japanese language, the speaker's gender plays an important role in determining word choice, tone of voice, and the types of expressions used. Non-native male speakers in particular should be careful about the kind of language and intonation they pick up from female teachers as well as female friends or girlfriends. We recommend that you listen to both males and females speak Japanese so you can grasp the subtle differences between male and female speech.

Tip #4:

[Learn Your Long Vowels Now!](#)

In Japanese, there is a big distinction between long vowels and short vowels. In fact, the distinction is so big that the length of a vowel can change the meaning of a word! Simply mistaking the length of a vowel can result in a misunderstanding, which is why it is important to pay attention to long vowels as you learn new Japanese vocabulary.

かど vs. カード

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

(kado) (kaado)
"corner" "card"

来てください vs. 聞いてください
(Kite kudasai) (Kiite kudasai)
"Please come" "Please listen"

Tip #5:

[Watch Out for Similar Sounding Words!](#)

Because there are a relatively small number of possible sounds in Japanese, many words are exactly the same or almost the same but with different meanings. As a beginner in Japanese, it can be easy to mix up similar sounding words.

Some infamous examples include:

きれい (kirei), meaning "pretty" vs. きらい (kirai), meaning "hated"

かわいい (kawaii), meaning "cute" vs. こわい (kawai), meaning "scary"

ひろい (hiroii), meaning "spacious" vs. ひどい (hidoi), meaning "terrible"



All About

The Best Japanese Phrases - Learn Your Japanese Teacher's Favorite
Phrases

15

Grammar Points

2

Grammar Points

The Best Japanese Phrases – Learn Your Japanese Teacher's Favorite Phrases

1. *sō ieba* (そういえば)

This phrase means “speaking of which” or “now that you mention it, and you use it when you are reminded of something and want to talk about it. For example, let’s say your friend is talking about party A that took place last week, and that reminds you of party B coming up next week. You can change the subject to party B by saying *sō ieba*, “speaking of parties,” and start talking about it. Using *sō ieba* is a natural way to segue into something related to the conversation at hand.

2. *toriaezu* (とりあえず)

Toriaezu (とりあえず) is a handy phrase that means, “in the meantime” or “for now.” You can use it to talk about some kind of action you take or decision you make “in the meantime” because for now, you feel like it’s better than doing nothing. For example, if you don’t know what to order at a restaurant, but at least you know what you want to drink, you can order your drinks using *toriaezu*; *toriaezu biru* (とりあえずビール), which means, “I’ll have a beer for now.” The “while we’re trying to decide” part is implied.

3. *ryōkai desu* (了解です)

Ryōkai is a word that means “comprehension” or “consent.” It is often used as an exclamation in the following ways: by itself (*ryōkai!*), with the copula *desu* (*ryōkai desu!*), and with the past tense verb *shimashita* (*ryōkai shimashita!*). These are all used to show that you have understood and will comply with what someone has told you. The literal meaning of all of these variations is very close to “roger!” or “ten-four!” in English, but they can be used in a variety of formal and informal situations.

4. *tekitō ni* (適当に)

Tekitō (適当) is an adjective that literally means “suitable” or “relevant.” When the particle *ni* (に) is added, however, it becomes an adverb. When used as an adverb to describe an action, the original meaning was that the action was done

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

properly, but recently it has started to mean that the action was done "half-heartedly" or "without much care."

■ Example sentences

Tekitō ni benkyō shimashita. (適当に勉強しました。) - "I studied half-heartedly."
Tekitō ni chūmon shite. (適当に注文して。) - "I'll leave it to you to order/Just order whatever."

5. tashika ni (確かに)

The phrase tashika ni (確かに) is often used as aizuchi, a type of word that was introduced in All About Japanese No.13. Aizuchi are interjections that we say in response to someone who is speaking. When you use tashika ni after something that someone has said, it means that you agree with them on that point, even if you don't agree with them on other things. In this way, it's very similar to the phrases "true," "indeed," or "for sure!" in English.





Pronunciation

Basic 46 Sounds

1

Grammar Points

2

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

Grammar Points

Japanese Pronunciation Series #1 - Basic 46 Sounds

In this lesson, we will introduce you to the vowels and some of the syllables that make up the Japanese language.

Introduction

Before we get into the pronunciation, let's first review how Japanese sounds work. Japanese has a relatively small set of sounds compared with other languages, with only fourteen consonants (k, s, t, n, h, m, y, r, w, g, z, d, b, and p) and 5 vowels (a, e, i, o, and u). In Japanese, there are no such words as the English word "strength," which has clusters of three or more consonants. Japanese is made up of syllables, which are made up of a consonant and a vowel. The only exceptions are the vowels and the "n" sound, which stands alone.

Vowels

First we will go over Japanese vowels, which is one of the easiest areas of pronunciation. English has the same five vowels as Japanese (a, e, i, o, and u), but if you consider all of the ways you can pronounce English vowels, you end up with twenty different sounds! In Japanese, the sounds that the vowels make do not change. They sound very similar to the vowels found in Spanish or Italian. Let's take a look at them:

- a - pronounced "ah," like the "a" in "father"
- e - pronounced "eh," like the "e" in "net"
- i - pronounced "ee," like the "ee" in "meet"*
- o - pronounced "oh," like the first part of the "o" sound in "so"
- u - pronounced "oo," like the "oo" in "mood," but with the lips less rounded*

*Devoicing

There is one small exception for the pronunciations of "i" and "u" that we will call devoicing. That means that they become almost "whispered." This happens when these vowels come between two of the voiceless consonants: p, t, k, s, or h. For

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

example, in words like shika ("deer") and hiku ("to pull"), the "i" sound is almost inaudible. This regularly occurs at the ends of the grammatical endings desu and masu as well, which are pronounced [dess] and [mahs], respectively.

Consonants

As we mentioned before, Japanese has the following set of fourteen consonants: k, s, t, n, h, m, y, r, w, g, z, d, b, and p. Each one is paired with a vowel to create a syllable. In this lesson, we will cover consonants "k" through "w."

| | | | | |
|----|----|----|----|----|
| KA | KI | KU | KE | KO |
| か | き | く | け | こ |

We pronounce the "k" syllables the same as in English.

| | | | | |
|----|-----|----|----|----|
| SA | SHI | SU | SE | SO |
| さ | し | す | せ | そ |

Note how si becomes shi. We pronounce the "s" syllables the same as in English.

| | | | | |
|----|-----|-----|----|----|
| TA | CHI | TSU | TE | TO |
| た | ち | つ | て | と |

Note how ti becomes chi and tu becomes tsu. We pronounce most "t" syllables the same as in English, with the exception of tsu. While this sound does exist in English, it never comes at the beginning of a word as it often does in Japanese. This sound is the same as the "ts" in the word "cats." Try saying "cats" without the "ca" to make this sound.

| | | | | |
|----|----|----|----|----|
| NA | NI | NU | NE | NO |
| な | に | ぬ | ね | の |

We pronounce the "n" syllables the same as in English.

| | | | | |
|----|----|----|----|----|
| HA | HI | FU | HE | HO |
| は | ひ | ふ | へ | ほ |

Note how hu becomes fu. We pronounce most "h" syllables the same as in English, with the exception of fu. The "f" sound in Japanese is a lot lighter than in English. When making this sound, blow air between the lips, and not between the lips and teeth. Imagine this sound as being a combination of both "h" and "f." We pronounce the characters は and へ as "wa" and "e" when used as particles. Refer to the paragraph below for more information.

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

| | | | | |
|----|----|----|----|----|
| MA | MI | MU | ME | MO |
| ま | み | む | め | も |

We pronounce the "m" syllables the same as in English.

| | | |
|----|----|----|
| YA | YU | YO |
| や | ゆ | よ |

We pronounce the "y" syllables the same as in English. Note that there are no "yi" and "ye" sounds in modern Japanese.

| | | | | |
|----|----|----|----|----|
| RA | RI | RU | RE | RO |
| ら | り | る | れ | ろ |

When you make an "r" sound in English, you roll your tongue, but it doesn't touch the roof of your mouth. In Japanese, however, you lightly tap the roof of your mouth with your tongue to create an "r" sound. It is similar to a rolling "r," except that it is only done once. It might be easier to make this sound if you think of it like making a light "d" sound. For example, to correctly pronounce the Japanese name Eri, try saying the name "Eddy" quickly and you will get a sound that comes very close to the Japanese "r."

| | |
|----|----|
| WA | WO |
| わ | を |

We pronounce the "w" in wa the same as in English, but we pronounce wo simply as "o" in Japanese.

| |
|---|
| N |
| ん |

The pronunciation of the "n" changes slightly depending on what kind of sound comes after it. Before "b," "p," and "m," it sounds more like an "m," as in shimbun ("newspaper"). Before "k" or "g," it sounds like "ng," as in genki ("energetic"). However, these differences are so slight that most Japanese people aren't even aware of them, so do not worry too much about trying to remember these rules. These sound changes occur naturally as you pronounce these words, but if you pronounce

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

them a bit differently, people will still understand you.

Pronunciation of Particles

There are a few exceptions when it comes to pronunciation that are important to remember. The topic particle wa and direction particle e are written using characters that are different from their pronunciation.

| Particle | Written as... | Pronounced as... |
|------------------------|---------------------|------------------|
| Topic Particle "wa" | は (literally, "ha") | わ (wa) |
| Direction Particle "e" | へ (literally, "he") | え (e) |





Pronunciation

Additional 23 sounds

2

Grammar Points

2

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

Grammar Points

Japanese Pronunciation Series #2 - 23 Additional Sounds

In this lesson, we will introduce you to the rest of the syllables that make up the Japanese language.

Consonants Continued

In this lesson, we'll cover the rest of the consonant + vowel combinations that make up the Japanese sounds. The hiragana symbols we use to portray these sounds are not actually new - they are the same as the ones from the last lesson, only this time we have added a symbol that looks like a double quote, which we call tenten (`), to create a set of different sounds. In the case of the "P" syllables, we have added a circle mark called maru (°) .

The "K" row becomes "G"

| | | | | |
|----|----|----|----|----|
| GA | GI | GU | GE | GO |
| が | ぎ | ぐ | げ | ご |

We pronounce the "g" syllables the same as in English.

The "S" row becomes "Z"

| | | | | |
|----|----|----|----|----|
| ZA | JI | ZU | ZE | ZO |
| ざ | じ | ず | ぜ | ぞ |

Note how zi becomes ji. We pronounce the "z" syllables the same as in English.

The "T" row becomes "D"

| | | | | |
|----|----|----|----|----|
| DA | JI | ZU | DE | DO |
| だ | ぢ | づ | で | ど |

Note how di becomes ji and du becomes zu.* We pronounce the "d" syllables the same

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

as in English.

The "H" row becomes "B" when adding a tenten (`)

| | | | | |
|----|----|----|----|----|
| BA | BI | BU | BE | BO |
| ば | び | ぶ | べ | ぼ |

We pronounce the "b" syllables the same as in English.

The "H" row becomes "P" when adding a maru (°)

| | | | | |
|----|----|----|----|----|
| PA | PI | PU | PE | PO |
| ぱ | ぴ | ぷ | ぺ | ぽ |

We pronounce the "p" syllables the same as in English.

*There are ji and zu sounds in both the "Z" row and the "D" row. We pronounce them the same, but じ and ず (from the "Z" row) are considered standard, and although ぢ and づ (from the "D" row) still show up in a handful of everyday words, they are not as common.

"New" Katakana Sounds

Because the range of syllables (spoken and written) in Japanese is limited, we cannot properly render many foreign sounds in Japanese, so we are unable to make distinctions between certain sets of sounds; for example, "r" and "l", and "s" and "th". The addition of "new" katakana characters has made it possible to represent new sounds into Japanese. Here, we'll go over a few of the more common ones.

| | | | |
|----|----|----|----|
| FA | FI | FE | FO |
| ファ | フィ | フェ | フォ |

Example words:

ファイル fairu ("file")

フィンランド Finrando ("Finland")

サンタフェ Santa fe ("Santa Fe")

アイフォン aifon ("iPhone")

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

| | | | | |
|----|----|----|----|----|
| VA | VI | VU | VE | VO |
| ヴァ | ヴィ | ヴ | ヴェ | ヴォ |

Example words:

ヴァイオリン vaiorin ("violin")

ヴィクトリア Vikutoria ("Victoria" (name))

デジャヴ deja vu ("déjà vu")

ラスヴェガス Rasu Vegasu ("Las Vegas")

| | |
|----|----|
| TI | TU |
| ティ | トゥ |

Pronounced in English as "tee" and "too."

Example word:

パーティー pāti ("party")

| | |
|----|----|
| DI | DU |
| ディ | ドゥ |

Pronounced in English as "dee" and "doo."

Example word:

コメディー comedī ("comedy")

| | |
|-----|-----|
| TYU | DYU |
| テュ | デュ |

Pronounced in English as "tyu" and "dyu."

Example word:

デュエット dyuetto ("duet")

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts





Pronunciation
Combination Sounds

3

Grammar Points

2

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

Grammar Points

Japanese Pronunciation Series #3 - 33 Combination Sounds

Combination Sounds

In this lesson, we will introduce you to thirty-three combination sounds made using small ya, yu, and yo.

Combination sounds are the syllables you get when you combine a full-sized character with a small ya, yu, or yo. The full-sized character is from the second row of the hiragana chart (characters with "i").

| | | |
|-----|-----|-----|
| KYA | KYU | KYO |
| きゃ | きゅ | きょ |

Example words:

きゃく kyaku ("customer")

きゅう kyū ("nine")

きよか kyoka ("permission")

| | | |
|-----|-----|-----|
| SHA | SHU | SHO |
| しゃ | しゅ | しょ |

Example words:

しゃかい shakai ("society")

しゅみ shumi ("hobby")

しょくじ shokuji ("meal")

| | | |
|-----|-----|-----|
| CHA | CHU | CHO |
| ちゃ | ちゅ | ちょ |

Example words:

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

ちやいろ chairo ("brown")
 ちゅんちゅん chunchun ("chirp chirp")
 ちよくせつ chokusetsu ("direct")

| | | |
|-----|-----|-----|
| NYA | NYU | NYO |
| にや | にゅ | によ |

Example words:

ぐにやぐにや gunyagunya ("crooked")
 ニューヨーク Nyūyōku ("New York")
 ニョロニョロ nyoronyoro ("slither")

| | | |
|-----|-----|-----|
| HYA | HYU | HYO |
| ひや | ひゅ | ひよ |

Example words:

ひやく hyaku ("one hundred")
 ヒューストン Hyūsuton ("Houston (Texas))"
 ひょう hyō ("hail")

| | | |
|-----|-----|-----|
| MYA | MYU | MYO |
| みや | みゅ | みよ |

Example words:

みやく myaku ("pulse")
 ミュージック myūjikku ("music")
 みょうじ myōji ("family name")

| | | |
|-----|-----|-----|
| RYA | RYU | RYO |
| りや | りゅ | りよ |

Example words:

りやく ryaku ("abbreviation")

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

りゅう ryū ("dragon")

みりよく miryoku ("charm")

| | | |
|-----|-----|-----|
| GYA | GYU | GYO |
| ぎゃ | ぎゅ | ぎょ |

Example words:

ギャグ gyagu ("gag" (joke))

わぎゅう wagyū ("Japanese beef")

きんぎょ kingyo ("goldfish")

| | | |
|----|----|----|
| JA | JU | JO |
| じゃ | じゅ | じょ |

We write these sounds as ja, ju, and jo using the Hepburn romanization system, instead of jya, jyu, and jyo.

Example words:

ジャズ jazu ("jazz")

じゅんすい junsui ("pure")

じょうだん jōdan ("joke")

| | | |
|-----|-----|-----|
| BYA | BYU | BYO |
| びゃ | びゅ | びょ |

Example words:

さんびゃく san-byaku ("three hundred")

デビュー debyū ("debut")

びょうき byōki ("illness")

| | | |
|-----|-----|-----|
| PYA | PYU | PYO |
| ぴゃ | ぴゅ | ぴょ |

Example words:

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

はっぴやく ha-ppyaku ("eight hundred")

ピュア pyua ("pure")

ぴょんぴょん pyonpyon ("hop hop")



Pronunciation
Double Consonants

4

Grammar Points

2

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

Grammar Points

Japanese Pronunciation Series #4 - Double consonants

In this lesson, we will introduce you to double consonants and show how they differ from single consonants.

Double Consonants

An important concept in Japanese pronunciation is double consonants, which can show up in the middle of a word (but not in the beginning). These double consonant clusters (kk, ss, tt, cc, etc.) differ from single consonants (k, s, t, c, etc.) in that it takes twice the amount of time to produce them. Think about the word "bookkeeper" in English. We almost pause in the middle as we take extra time to pronounce the double consonant cluster "kk." This is also how it works in Japanese. Whether a consonant is double or not can change the meaning of the word, making double consonants an important concept to learn. Compare the following examples:

| Japanese | Translation | Japanese | Translation |
|-------------|-------------|---------------|----------------|
| かこ (kako) | "past" | かっこ (kakko) | "brackets" |
| にし (nishi) | "west" | にっし (nisshi) | "daily report" |
| スパイ (supai) | "spy" | すっぱい (suppai) | "sour" |
| かた (kata) | "shoulder" | かった (katta) | "won" |
| きて (kite) | "come" | きって (kitte) | "cut" |
| あさり (asari) | "clam" | あっさり (assari) | "plain" |
| いち (ichi) | "one" | いっち (icchi) | "accordance" |

In some instances, the Japanese language uses a double "n." We hold this "n" sound for twice as long. Look at the following examples:

| | |
|-------------|------------------|
| おんな (on'na) | "woman", "women" |
|-------------|------------------|

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

| | |
|----------------|-------------------------|
| ざんねん (zan'nen) | "regret", "unfortunate" |
|----------------|-------------------------|

In some cases, the word meaning changes (as in the examples above) depending on whether there is one "n" or two:

| | | | |
|-------------|-----------------|-----------|---------|
| こんな (konna) | "this kind of" | こな (kona) | "flour" |
| ほんね (honne) | "true feelings" | ほね (hone) | "bone" |

Pronunciation of "n" (ん)

Let's take a look at the pronunciation of the stand-alone "n" syllable. The pronunciation of this "n" changes slightly depending on what kind of sound comes after it. Before "b", "p", and "m", it sounds more like an "m" as in shimbun ("newspaper"). Before "k" or "g", it sounds like "ng", as in genki ("energetic"). However, these differences are so slight that most Japanese people aren't even aware of them, so do not worry too much about trying to remember these rules. These sound changes occur naturally as you pronounce these words, but if you pronounce them a bit differently, people will still understand you.

| When "n" comes before... | The "n" sound changes to... | Example word | Sounds like... |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------|--------------------------------|-----------------|
| b/p/m | → m | しんぶん shinbun "newspaper" | shim u n |
| k/g | → ng | げんき genki "energetic" | gen g ki |



Pronunciation

Long vowels

5

Grammar Points

2

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

Grammar Points

Japanese Pronunciation Series #5 - Long vowels

The focus of this lesson is to introduce you to long vowels and explain how they differ from short vowels.

Long Vowels vs. Short Vowels

The concept of long and short vowel sounds is an important concept to understand when learning Japanese pronunciation. In Japanese, vowels can be lengthened, and there is a very distinct difference between long and short vowels. Note that in this lesson, a macron (small horizontal line over a vowel) denotes a long vowel that we hold for twice as long as a regular vowel.

| Double vowels and vowel pairs | Sounds like... |
|----------------------------------|----------------|
| ああ aa | あー ahh |
| いい ii | いー ee |
| うう uu | うー ooh |
| ええ ee えい ei | えー ehh |
| おお oo おう ou | おー ohh |

In many cases, whether the vowel is long or short will determine the meaning of the word. Let's illustrate this with some examples:

| | |
|----------|--------|
| かど | カード |
| kado | kādo |
| "corner" | "card" |

In the case of k^ādo ("card"), we hold the "a" sound for approximately twice as long as the "a" sound in kado ("corner"). As you can see, the meaning is very different depending on whether the vowel is long or short! Let's look at a few more examples:

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

| | |
|----------|---------------|
| おばさん | おばあさん |
| o-ba-san | o-bā-san |
| "aunt" | "grandmother" |

| | |
|----------|---------------|
| おじさん | おじいさん |
| o-ji-san | o-jī-san |
| "uncle" | "grandfather" |

| | |
|---------|--------|
| くつ | くっつ |
| kutsu | kutsū |
| "shoes" | "pain" |

| | |
|-------|-----------|
| エゴ | えいご |
| ego | eigo |
| "ego" | "English" |

| | |
|-----------|-------------------|
| とる | とおる |
| toru | tōru |
| "to take" | "to pass through" |

As you can see in the first chart above, the vowel combinations of "ei" and "ou" sound like "ē" and "ō," respectively.

More examples:

| Japanese | Rōmaji | Translation | Sounds like... |
|----------|--------|-------------|----------------|
| せんせい | sensei | "teacher" | せんせー sensē |
| どうも | doumo | "Thanks." | ドーも dōmo |

In the first word sensei, the combination of "e" + "i" sounds just a long "e"

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

vowel. In the second word mō, we have a combination of "o" + "u," but what we hear is only the "o" sound lengthened. We don't hear the "u" that comes at the end.





Gengo Beginner Japanese

Lessons 1 to 30

1-30

Introduction

This is Innovative Language Learning.

Go to InnovativeLanguage.com/audiobooks to get the lesson notes for this course and sign up for your FREE lifetime account.

The course consists of lessons centered on a practical, real-life conversation.

In each lesson, first, we'll introduce the background of the conversation.

Then, you'll hear the conversation two times:

One time at natural native speed and one time with the English translation.

After the conversation, you'll learn carefully selected vocabulary and key grammar concepts.

Next, you'll hear the conversation 1 time at natural native speed at the end of the lesson.

Finally, practice what you have learned with the review track. In the review track, a native speaker will say a word or phrase from the dialogue, wait three seconds, and then give you the English translation. Say the word aloud during the pause. Halfway through the review track, the order will be reversed. The English translation will be provided first, followed by a three-second pause, and then the word or phrase from the dialogue. Repeat the words and phrases you hear in the review track aloud to practice pronunciation and reinforce what you have learned.

Before starting the lessons, go to InnovativeLanguage.com/audiobooks to get the lesson notes for this course and sign up for your FREE lifetime account.



Gengo Japanese S1

Where Did You Learn to Speak Japanese Like That?!

1

| | |
|---------------------|---|
| Formal Kanji | 2 |
| Formal Kana | 2 |
| Formal Romanization | 2 |
| English | 3 |
| Vocabulary | 3 |

Kanji

Grammar Points 4
Cultural Insight 7

| | |
|-------|-----------------|
| 本田大介 | アシュリーさん？ |
| アシュリー | 本田くん。こんにちは。 |
| 本田大介 | 出発は明日ですか。 |
| アシュリー | いいえ。今日です。 |
| 本田大介 | 今日？ |
| アシュリー | はい。 |
| 本田大介 | あー、ニューヨークは朝ですか。 |
| アシュリー | はい。今、四時です。 |
| | 出発は十一時です。 |
| 本田大介 | じゃ、よい旅を。 |
| アシュリー | はい。じゃ、また、後で。 |

Kana

| | |
|---------|------------------|
| ほんだだいすけ | アシュリーさん？ |
| アシュリー | ほんだくん。こんにちは。 |
| ほんだだいすけ | しゅっぱつはあしたですか。 |
| アシュリー | いいえ。きょうです。 |
| ほんだだいすけ | きょう？ |
| アシュリー | はい。 |
| ほんだだいすけ | あー、ニューヨークはあさですか。 |
| アシュリー | はい。いま、よじです。 |
| | しゅっぱつはじゅういちじです。 |
| ほんだだいすけ | じゃ、よいたびを。 |
| アシュリー | はい。じゃ、また、あとで。 |

Formal Romanization

| | |
|---------------|------------------------------|
| Honda Daisuke | Ashur -san? |
| Ashur | Honda-kun.Konnichiwa. |
| Honda Daisuke | Shuppatsu wa ashita desu ka. |
| Ashur | lie. Ky desu. |
| Honda Daisuke | Ky ? |
| Ashur | Hai. |

Honda Daisuke , Ny y ku wa asa desu ka.
 Ashur Hai. Ima, yo-ji desu.
 Shuppatsu wa j ichi-ji desu.
 Honda Daisuke Ja, yoi tabi o.
 Ashur Hai. ja, mata, ato de.

English

Daisuke Honda Ashley?
 Ashley Honda-kun! Hello!
 Daisuke Honda Is your departure tomorrow?
 Ashley No, it's today.
 Daisuke Honda Today?
 Ashley Yes.
 Daisuke Honda Oh, is it morning in New York?
 Ashley Yes. Right now, it's 4 o'clock.
 My departure is at 11.
 Daisuke Honda Okay, have a nice trip!
 Ashley Okay. Well, see you later!

Vocabulary

| Kanji | Kana | Romaji | English |
|--------|--------|---------------|--|
| さん | さん | san | polite name suffix, similar to Mr. or Ms. |
| 君 | くん | kun | name suffix often used for males younger or of lower status than you |
| こんにちは | こんにちは | Kon'nichi wa. | Hello. |
| 出発 | しゅっぱつ | shuppatsu | departure |
| 明日 | あした | ashita | tomorrow |
| いいえ | いいえ | iie | No. |
| 今日 | きょう | ky | today |
| はい | はい | hai | Yes. |
| ニューヨーク | ニューヨーク | Ny Y ku | New York |
| 今 | いま | ima | now |
| 四時 | よじ | yo-ji | four o'clock |

| 朝 | あさ | asa | morning |
|-----------|-----------|---------|-----------------------|
| じゃあ or じゃ | じゃあ or じゃ | j or ja | well, well then, okay |

Vocabulary Sample Sentences

田中さんは、パイロットです。

Tanaka-san wa pairotto desu.

田中君、こんにちは。

Tanaka-kun konnichiwa.

こんにちは。はじめまして。

Kon'nichiwa. Hajimemashite.

出発は何時ですか。

Shuppatsu wa nan-ji desu ka.

また、明日。

Mata, ashita.

いいえ、ちがいます。

lie, chigaimasu.

今日はクリスマスです。

Ky wa kurisumasu desu.

A「田中さんですか。」 B「はい。」

A:Tanaka-san desu ka. B: Hai.

ニューヨークは、一時です。

Ny Y ku wa ichi-ji desu.

今、十一時です。

Ima, j ichi-ji desu.

四時です。

Yo-ji desu.

今、朝四時です。

Ima, asa yo-ji desu.

じゃ、また。

Ja, mata.

Mr./Ms. Tanaka is a pilot.

Hello, Mr. Tanaka.

Hello. Nice to meet you.

What time is the departure?

See you tomorrow.

No, that's wrong.

Today is Christmas.

A: Are you Mr. Tanaka? B: Yes.

It's 1:00 in New York.

It's 11 o'clock now.

It's four o'clock.

It's four o'clock in the morning.

See you later.

Grammar Points

Gengo Japanese Lesson #1 - Where did you learn to speak Japanese like that?!

今、四時です。

Ima, yo-ji desu.

"Right now, it's 4:00."

In this lesson, you will:

- Learn how to make simple [A is B] sentences
- Learn how to make simple [Is A B?] questions
- Learn how to respond to questions with "yes" and "no"
- Learn how to correctly address people with name suffixes such as san (さん)

[A is B] - Affirmative sentences

Simple [A is B] sentences follow the pattern of [A wa B desu]. Wa (は) is a particle that comes after the topic that the speaker is going to talk about, which is why wa (は) is often called the topic marking particle. The copula desu (です) roughly corresponds to the English verb "to be" and can mean "I am," "you are," "it is," and so on, depending on context.

Construction:

[A is B] = [A wa B desu]

Examples:

| Japanese | Romaji | English |
|--------------|---------------------------|---|
| ケンはパイロットです。 | Ken wa pairotto desu. | "Ken is a pilot." |
| ケンはダンサーです。 | Ken wa dans desu. | "Ken is a dancer." |
| しゅっぱつはきょうです。 | Shuppatsu wa ky desu. | "My departure is today." ("I leave today.") |
| しゅっぱつはあしたです。 | Shuppatsu wa ashita desu. | "My departure is tomorrow." ("I leave tomorrow.") |

Note that when we already understand the topic from context, we can leave it out of the sentence completely. We saw this example in the dialog, where Ashley leaves the shuppatsu wa ("departure") part off of her answer because it's already understood:

1. 本田大介:出発は明日ですか。
Honda Daisuke: Shuppatsu wa ashita desu ka?
Daisuke Honda: "Is your departure tomorrow?"
2. アシュリー:いいえ。今日です。
Ashur : lie. Ky desu.
Ashley: "No, it's today."

[Is A B?] - Yes/No Questions

Adding ka (か) to the end of an affirmative sentence turns it into a question. The word order does not change as it does in English.

Construction:

[Is A B?] = [~~BA~~ ~~w~~su ka?]

Examples:

| Japanese | Romaji | English |
|---------------|------------------------------|---|
| しゅっぱつはきょうですか。 | Shuppatsu wa ky desu ka. | "Is your departure today?" ("Are you leaving today?") |
| しゅっぱつはあしたですか。 | Shuppatsu wa ashita desu ka. | "Is your departure tomorrow?" ("Are you leaving tomorrow?") |

Responding with "Yes" and "No"

In the dialogue, we heard the words hai (はい) for "yes" and iie (いいえ) for "no."

| Japanese | Romaji | English |
|----------|--------|---------|
| はい | Hai | "Yes" |

| | | |
|-----|-----|------|
| いいえ | lie | "No" |
|-----|-----|------|

Along with the meaning of "yes," hai (はい) also has the meanings of "okay" and "right." We also use it to show that we are listening to or that we understand what someone is saying. It does not always mean that you are giving an affirmative answer. For more information on this, please see All About Japanese Lesson #5 (Top 5 Must Know Japanese Phrases).

Vocabulary Usage: Have a nice trip! and See you later!

じゃ、よい旅を。 [Ja, yoi tabi o.] "Have a nice trip!"

Let's look at the components of this phrase. Ja (じゃ) means "well then", yoi (よい) means "good", and tabi (旅) means "trip or travel". Yoi tabi o (よい旅を) is a set phrase that means "have a good trip", so Ja, yoi tabi o (じゃ、よい旅を) can be translated as "Well then... have a good trip!"

じゃ、また、後で。 [Ja, mata, ato de.] "Okay. Well, see you later!"

Let's look at the components of this phrase. Mata (また) means "again", and ato de (後で) means "later". This phrase literally means "Well then...later again", with the "see you" part inferred. This phrase can also be shortened to Ja mata (じゃまた) or Ja ato de (じゃあとで), or even just Ja (じゃ) by itself, which can mean "See ya" or "Bye".

In the Appendix

In this lesson, we saw some numbers being used when Ashley and Daisuke talked about time. For more detailed information on numbers and how to tell time, please check the following Appendix lessons: Numbers (Appendix #1) and Times: Hours/Minutes (Appendix #2).

Cultural Insight

Addressing People with Name Suffixes

In the dialog, we heard two different name suffixes used when addressing people: -san and -kun. Let's take a look at these and other name suffixes used to address people in Japanese.

We can use these suffixes after first names, last names, or full names.

| Suffix | Romaji | Explanation | Examples |
|--------|---------|---|----------------------------------|
| -さん | -san | Similar to "Mr." or "Mrs." or "Ms." in English. (formal) | "Ashley-san" "Peter-san" |
| -くん | -kun | Usually used after the names of boys or young men that the speaker is close with. Never used towards one's superiors. | "Honda-kun" |
| -ちゃん | -chan | Usually used after the names of girls and young children. (informal) | "Ashley-chan" |
| -せんせい | -sensei | Used after the names of teachers, doctors, and other authority figures. Can also be used on its own. (formal) | "Naomi-sensei" |
| -さま | -sama | Similar to san, but much more polite. Often used towards customers. (very formal) | "Ashley-sama" (as a customer) |





Gengo Japanese S1

How to Make a First Impression in Japanese that Will Last a Lifetime

2

| | |
|---------------------|---|
| Formal Kanji | 2 |
| Formal Kana | 2 |
| Formal Romanization | 3 |
| English | 3 |
| Vocabulary | 4 |
| Grammar Points | 5 |
| Cultural Insight | 7 |

Formal Kanji

| | |
|-------|-----------------------|
| 豊田一郎 | (singing in Japanese) |
| アシュリー | すみません。 |
| 豊田一郎 | (singing in Japanese) |
| アシュリー | あの、すみません。 |
| 豊田一郎 | あ、すみません。どうぞ。 |
| アシュリー | すみません。ありがとうございます。...。 |
| | こんにちは。 |
| 豊田一郎 | ...あ、どうも。 |
| アシュリー | 私はアシュリーです。 |
| | どうぞよろしくお願いいたします。 |
| 豊田一郎 | あ、僕は豊田一郎です。 |
| アシュリー | はい?...とよ らい ち? |
| | 名前、もう一度お願いします。 |
| 豊田一郎 | と・よ・た |
| アシュリー | とよた |
| 豊田一郎 | い・ち・ろ・う |
| アシュリー | いちろう... |
| | とよた いちろう さん |
| 豊田一郎 | はい。 |

Formal Kana

| | |
|---------|-----------------------|
| とよたいちろう | (singing in Japanese) |
| アシュリー | すみません。 |
| とよたいちろう | (singing in Japanese) |
| アシュリー | あの、すみません。 |
| とよたいちろう | あ、すみません。どうぞ。 |
| アシュリー | すみません。ありがとうございます。...。 |
| | こんにちは。 |
| とよたいちろう | ...あ、どうも。 |
| アシュリー | わたしはアシュリーです。 |
| | どうぞよろしくお願いいたします。 |
| とよたいちろう | あ、ぼくはとよだいちろうです。 |
| アシュリー | はい?...とよ らい ち? |
| | なまえ、もういちどおねがいします。 |
| とよたいちろう | と・よ・た |

| | |
|---------|-------------|
| アシュリー | とよた |
| とよたいちろう | い・ち・ろ・う |
| アシュリー | いちろう・・・ |
| | とよた いちろう さん |
| とよたいちろう | はい。 |

Formal Romanization

| | |
|--------------|----------------------------------|
| Toyoda Ichir | (singing in Japanese) |
| Ashur | Sumimasen. |
| Toyoda Ichir | (singing in Japanese) |
| Ashur | Ano, sumimasen. |
| Toyoda Ichir | A, sumimasen. D zo. |
| Ashur | Sumimasen. Arigat gozaimasu..... |
| | Konnichiwa. |
| Toyota Ichir | ... A, d mo. |
| Ashur | Watashi wa Ashur desu. |
| | D zo yoroshiku o-negai shimasu. |
| Toyota Ichir | A, boku wa Toyota Ichir desu. |
| Ashur | Hai?... Toyo rai chi? |
| | Namae, m ichido o-negai shimasu. |
| Toyota Ichir | To. yo. ta |
| Ashur | Toyota |
| Toyota Ichir | I. chi. ro. u |
| Ashur | Ichir ... |
| | Toyota Ichir -san |
| Toyota Ichir | Hai. |

English

| | |
|---------------|----------------------------------|
| Ichiro Toyota | (singing in Japanese) |
| Ashley | Excuse me. |
| Ichiro Toyota | (singing in Japanese) |
| Ashley | Um, excuse me... |
| Ichiro Toyota | Oh, sorry. Go ahead. |
| Ashley | Thanks. Thank you very much. ... |
| | Hello. |

Ichiro Toyota Oh, hello.
 Ashley I'm Ashley.
 Nice to meet you.
 Ichiro Toyota Oh, I'm Ichiro Toyota.
 Ashley I'm sorry? Toyo...raichi...?
 Could you give me your name one more time?
 Ichiro Toyota To-yo-ta
 Ashley Toyota
 Ichiro Toyota I-chi-ro
 Ashley Ichiro...
 Mr. Ichiro Toyota.
 Ichiro Toyota Yes!

Vocabulary

| Kanji | Kana | Romaji | English |
|------------|------------|-------------------|------------------------------------|
| すみません | すみません | sumimasen | Excuse me, I'm sorry, Thank you |
| どうぞ | どうぞ | d zo | Go ahead, Here you are |
| ありがとうございます | ありがとうございます | Arigat gozaimasu. | Thank you. (formal) |
| あの・・・ | あの・・・ | ano... | um... |
| 名前 | なまえ | namae | name |
| どうも。 | どうも。 | D mo. | Thanks. |
| 僕 | ぼく | boku | I ,me (used by males) |
| 私 | わたし | watashi | I, me |

Vocabulary Sample Sentences

すみません。もう一度お願いします。
 はい、どうぞ。
 どうもありがとうございます。
 名前は、ヒロです。
 ぼくは、プロボクサーです。
 私は、田中です。

I'm sorry. Could you say that again?
 Here you go.
 Thank you very much.
 My (first) name is Hiro.
 I'm a professional boxer.
 I'm Tanaka.

Grammar Points

Gengo Japanese #2 - How to make a First Impression in Japanese that Will Last a Lifetime
私はアシュリーです。どうぞよろしくお願ひします。

Watashi wa Ashur desu. D zo yoroshiku onegai shimasu.

"I'm Ashley. Nice to meet you."

In this lesson, you will:

Learn how to introduce yourself by giving your name

Learn the different uses of the phrases sumimasen (すみません)

Learn expressions that use the phrase onegai shimasu (お願ひします)

Introducing Yourself

When introducing yourself, start with Watashi wa (わたしは、"I"), then give your name, and end the phrase with desu (です). We first introduced this phrase in Basic Bootcamp Lesson #1.

| Japanese | Romaji | English |
|-------------------|-------------------------|---------------|
| わたしは [name] です。 | Watashi wa [name] desu. | "I'm [name]." |

Examples:

| Japanese | Romaji | English |
|------------|-----------------------|--------------|
| わたしはサラです。 | Watashi wa Sara desu. | "I'm Sarah." |
| わたしはラウルです。 | Watashi wa Raul desu. | "I'm Raul." |

Note that there are different ways to refer to oneself in Japanese. In the dialogue, we saw the first two examples being used.

| Pronoun | Romaji | Explanation |
|---------|-----------|--|
| わたし (私) | watashi | The standard word for "I." Both men and women can use this. |
| ぼく (僕) | boku | Used mainly by men and young boys. |
| おれ (俺) | ore | This is a rough, informal way to refer to oneself used mainly by men and young boys. |
| わたくし | watakushi | This is a very polite way to refer to oneself. Both men and women can use this. |
| あたし | atashi | This is an informal way to refer to oneself mainly used by women. |

Three Different Uses of すみません (sumimasen)

In this dialogue, we used sumimasen (すみません) in three different ways. Let's take a look at the different meanings of sumimasen (すみません).

"Excuse me"

It can be used to get someone's attention if you need to say something or make your way through a crowd.

アシュリー: あの、すみません。

Ashur: sumimasen.

Ashley: "Um, excuse me..."

"I'm sorry"

It can be used to lightly apologize.

豊田一郎: あ、すみません。どうぞ。

Toyota Ichir : A, sumimasen. D zo.

Ichiro Toyota: "Oh, sorry. Go ahead."

"Thank you"

It can be used to thank someone for doing something for you.

アシュリー: すみません。ありがとうございます。

Ashur : Sumimasen. Arigat gozaimasu.

Ashley: "Thanks. Thank you very much."

Phrases That Use onegai shimasu (お願いします)

There are many different uses for onegai shimasu (お願いします). Here we'll look at three different phrases that use onegai shimasu (お願いします).

Yoroshiku onegai shimasu (よろしくお願いします)

First introduced in Basic Bootcamp #1

This phrase is often used when meeting someone for the first time. English does not have an equivalent, but literally, this phrase roughly translates to, "Please look favorably upon me."

Using this phrase shows respect for the person you are meeting, and indicates that you are looking forward to a good relationship with them. Whether you are meeting one person or fifty, using this phrase will make a great impression.

D zo yoroshiku onegai shimasu (どうぞよろしくお願ひします)

This phrase is the same as the one above, but the added d zo (どうぞ) makes it even more formal.

M ichido onegai shimasu (もう一度お願ひします)

First introduced in Basic Bootcamp #3

M ichido (もういちど) means, "one more time," so this phrase literally means "one more time, please" and can be used when you are asking someone to repeat something.

Cultural Insight

Difficulty with Names

When you are a beginner in a foreign language, it can be difficult catching names in that foreign language, and this goes for Japanese as well. Many names sound similar, and you might not be able to tell where someone's last name ends and first name starts! If you have trouble catching someone's name, don't hesitate to ask them to repeat it. To ask someone to repeat their name, you can use the phrase mentioned in this lesson, M ichido onegai shimasu (もう一度お願ひします), which literally means "One more time, please." Similarly, when you are introducing yourself and giving your name, make sure that you say it slowly and clearly so that you are understood. And remember, don't add the polite suffix -san (さん) to your own name!



Gengo Japanese S1

Do People Understand Where You're Coming From?

3

| | |
|---------------------|---|
| Formal Kanji | 2 |
| Formal Kana | 2 |
| Formal Romanization | 2 |
| English | 3 |
| Vocabulary | 3 |
| Grammar Points | 4 |
| Cultural Insight | 8 |

Formal Kanji

| | |
|-------|-----------------------|
| アシュリー | 豊田一郎さん |
| 豊田一郎 | はい？豊田です。 |
| アシュリー | 豊田さん、それは、スマップですか。 |
| 豊田一郎 | はい？ |
| アシュリー | スマップの歌ですか。 |
| 豊田一郎 | ああ、はい。スマップの歌です。 |
| | アシュリーさんの出身はニューヨークですか。 |
| アシュリー | はい。豊田さんの出身はどこですか。 |
| 豊田一郎 | 僕の出身は東京です。 |
| アシュリー | 豊田さんは学生ですか。 |
| 豊田一郎 | ありがとうございます！ |
| | でも違います。 |

Formal Kana

| | |
|---------|--------------------------|
| アシュリー | とよたいちろうさん |
| とよたいちろう | はい？とよたです。 |
| アシュリー | とよたさん、それは、スマップですか。 |
| とよたいちろう | はい？ |
| アシュリー | スマップのうたですか。 |
| とよたいちろう | ああ、はい。スマップのうたです。 |
| | アシュリーさんのしゅっしんはニューヨークですか。 |
| アシュリー | はい。とよたさんのしゅっしんはどこですか。 |
| とよたいちろう | ぼくのしゅっしんはとうきょうです。 |
| アシュリー | とよたさんはがくせいですか。 |
| とよたいちろう | ありがとうございます！ |
| | でもちがいます。 |

Formal Romanization

| | |
|--------------|---------------------------------------|
| Ashur | Toyota Ichir -san |
| Toyota Ichir | Hai? Toyota desu. |
| Ashur | Toyota-san, sore wa, Sumappu desu ka. |
| Toyota Ichir | Hai? |

Ashur Sumappu no uta desu ka.
 Toyota Ichir , hai. Sumappu no uta desu.
 Ashur -san no shusshin wa Ny y ku desu ka.
 Ashur Hai. Toyota-san no shusshin wa doko desu ka.
 Toyota Ichir Boku no shusshin wa T ky desu.
 Ashur Toyota-san wa gakusei desu ka.
 Toyota Ichir Arigat gozaimasu!
 Demo chigaimasu.

English

Ashley Ichiro Toyota-san
 Ichiro Toyota Yes? Just Toyota is fine.
 Ashley Toyota-san, is that SMAP?
 Ichiro Toyota I'm sorry?
 Ashley Is that song by SMAP?
 Ichiro Toyota Ohh, yes! It's a song by SMAP.
 Are you from New York?
 Ashley Yes. Where are you from?
 Ichiro Toyota I'm from Tokyo.
 Ashley Are you a student?
 Ichiro Toyota Why, thank you very much (for the compliment)!
 But no, I'm not.

Vocabulary

| Kanji | Kana | Romaji | English |
|-------|-------|------------|----------------------------------|
| 出身 | しゅっしん | shusshin | hometown |
| 東京 | とうきょう | T ky | Tokyo (current capital of Japan) |
| 学生 | がくせい | gakusei | student |
| 歌 | うた | uta | song |
| でも | でも | demo | but, however |
| 違います | ちがいます | chigaimasu | to differ, incorrect |
| どこ | どこ | doko | where |

Vocabulary Sample Sentences

| | |
|--------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 出身はどこですか。 | Where are you from? |
| 出身は東京です。 | I'm from Tokyo. |
| ぼくは学生です。 | I'm a student.(informal, male speech) |
| 宇多田ヒカルの歌です。 | This is a song by Utada Hikaru. |
| 私は、日本人です。でも、出身はニューヨークです。 | I'm Japanese, but I'm from New York. |
| それは、違います。 | That's not right. |
| マリアさんの出身はどこですか。 | Where is Maria from(originally)? |

Grammar Points

Gengo Japanese #3 - Do People Understand Where You're Coming From?

スマップの歌です。アシュリーさんの出身はニューヨークですか。

Sumappu no uta desu. Ashur -san no shusshin wa Ny Y ku desu ka.

"It's a song by SMAP. Are you from New York?"

In this lesson, you will:

Learn how to talk about things that belong to you or other people

Learn how to ask "Where are you from?" and how to answer the same question

Talking About Possession

We use the possessive particle no (の) between two nouns, indicating that the first noun possesses the second noun or that the first noun is modifying the second.

| Noun 1 | Possessive Particle | Noun 2 | Translation |
|------------------------|---------------------|---------------|-----------------------|
| アシュリーさん Ashur -san) | の (no) | 出身 (shusshin) | "Ashley's hometown" |
| わたし (Watashi) | の (no) | 名前 (namae) | "My name" |
| ぼく (Boku) | の (no) | 名前 (namae) | "My name" (masculine) |

Sample Sentences

アシュリーさんの出身はニューヨークです。

Ashur -san no shusshin wa Ny Y ku desu.

"Ashley is from New York." (literally, "Ashley's hometown is New York.")

- 私の名前はサラです。

Watashi no namae wa Sara desu.

"My name is Sarah."

- 僕の名前はリックです。

Boku no namae wa Rikku desu.

"My name is Rick."

"Where are you from? I'm from..."

The keyword we use when talking about where you (or someone else) is from is shusshin (出身), which refers to the place where one originally came from (this can refer to a town, city, country, etc.).

Asking where one is from

To ask where someone is from, we start out with the keyword shusshin (出身). To this we add the topic marking particle wa (は), the word doko (どこ) which means, "where," and the copula desu (です) topped off with the question particle ka (か).

| Japanese | Romaji | English |
|-----------|---------------------------|-----------------------|
| 出身はどこですか。 | Shusshin wa doko desu ka? | "Where are you from?" |

(あなたの)出身はどこですか ([Anata no] shusshin wa doko desu ka) is the original sentence, but since using anata ("you") is considered too direct in Japanese culture, we usually omit anata no ("your").

To be more specific, you can add the person's name plus no (の) before shusshin (出身).

Example:

1. アシュリーさんの出身はどこですか？

Ashur -san no shusshin wa doko desu ka?

"Where are you from, Ashley?"

Answering

When we answer this question, we use the possessive particle no (の) that we just learned above. Watashi no shusshin (私の出身) means, "my hometown."

| My Hometown | (place) | copula | English |
|-----------------------------------|---------|----------------|---------------------|
| 私の出身は (Watashi no shusshin wa) | (place) | です。 (desu.) | "I'm from (place)." |

Examples:

1. 私の出身はアメリカです。
Watashi no shusshin wa Amerika desu.
"I'm from America."
2. 私の出身はオーストラリアです。
Watashi no shusshin wa sutoraria desu.
"I'm from Australia."
3. 僕の出身はイギリスです。
Boku no shusshin wa Igrisu desu.
"I'm from England."

Lastly, let's compare side-by-side the three phrases using shusshin (出身):

Affirmative: "Ashley is from New York."

| | | | | |
|----------|--------------|-------------|---------|-------|
| Japanese | アシュリーさんの | 出身は | ニューヨーク | です。 |
| Romaji | Ashur-san no | shusshin wa | Ny Y ku | desu. |

Yes/No Question: "Is Ashley from New York?"

All you have to do is add the question marking particle ka (か) to the end of the affirmative sentence.

| | | | | | |
|----------|--------------|-------------|---------|------|-----|
| Japanese | アシュリーさんの | 出身は | ニューヨーク | です | か？ |
| Romaji | Ashur-san no | shusshin wa | Ny Y ku | desu | ka? |

WH-question ("where"): "Where is Ashley from?"

Use the question word doko (どこ), meaning "where," instead of New York.

| | | | | | |
|----------|--------------|-------------|------|------|-----|
| Japanese | アシュリーさんの | 出身は | どこ | です | か？ |
| Romaji | Ashur-san no | shusshin wa | doko | desu | ka? |

Vocabulary Usage: Ko-so-a-do Words

Demonstrative words are words used to specify what you are talking about. In Japanese, there are three main categories ("this," "that," and "that over there") and one category for questions. We refer to these as ko-so-a-do words.

The prefix tells us a location:

| Prefix | "Location" |
|---------|---------------------------------------|
| こ ko | "here, near" |
| そ so | "there, not far off" |
| あ a | "there, at a distance" |
| ど do | (not location but question marker) |

In the dialog, we saw the word sore (それ), which means "that" or "that one". Let's take a look at the other Ko-so-a-do words in this series:

| Japanese | Romaji | English |
|----------|--------|-------------------------|
| これ | kore | "this one" |
| それ | sore | "that one" |
| あれ | are | "that one" (over there) |
| どれ | dore | "which one" |

In the Appendix

In this lesson, we introduced one set of Ko-so-a-do phrases as well as the question word "where" (doko, どこ). For more detailed information on other Ko-so-a-do phrases and question words, please check the following Appendix lessons: Ko-so-a-do Words (Appendix #9) and Question Words (Appendix #10).

Cultural Insight

Which Name Should You Use?

In the dialogue, Ichiro laughed when Ashley called him by his full name. This is because, in Japanese, calling someone by their full name is not that common and can sound a little strange. When addressing someone you don't know very well, it is best to address them with their last name plus the polite suffix -san (さん), which was discussed in the last lesson. It is likely that if someone wants you to call them by a different name (for example, their first name, or a nickname) they will let you know.



Gengo Japanese S1

Japanese Phrases You Use Everyday

4

| | |
|---------------------|---|
| Formal Kanji | 2 |
| Formal Kana | 2 |
| Formal Romanization | 3 |
| English | 3 |
| Vocabulary | 3 |
| Grammar Points | 4 |
| Cultural Insight | 7 |

Formal Kanji

| | |
|------------------|------------------------------------|
| 豊田一郎 | 僕はフォトジャーナリストです。 |
| アシュリー | へー。すごい。 |
| 豊田一郎 | アシュリーさんは？ |
| Flight Attendant | Black tea, coffee or Japanese tea? |
| アシュリー | あ、日本茶、お願いします。 |
| Flight Attendant | 日本茶ですね。 |
| | はい、どうぞ。お客様は？ |
| 豊田一郎 | 紅茶、お願いします。 |
| Flight Attendant | お砂糖とミルクは？ |
| 豊田一郎 | お願いします。 |
| (Takes a sip) | |
| 豊田一郎 | あちっ！ |
| アシュリー | 大丈夫ですか。熱いですか。 |
| | (takes a sip) あちっ。(coughs)まずいです。 |
| 豊田一郎 | シーッ。(laughs) |

Formal Kana

| | |
|------------------|------------------------------------|
| とよたいちろう | ぼくはフォトジャーナリストです。 |
| アシュリー | へー。すごい。 |
| とよたいちろう | アシュリーさんは？ |
| Flight Attendant | Black tea, coffee or Japanese tea? |
| アシュリー | あ、にほんちゃ、おねがいします。 |
| Flight Attendant | にほんちゃですね。 |
| | はい、どうぞ。おきゃくさまは？ |
| とよたいちろう | こうちゃ、おねがいします。 |
| Flight Attendant | おさとうとミルクは？ |
| とよたいちろう | おねがいします。 |
| (Takes a sip) | |
| とよたいちろう | あちっ！ |
| アシュリー | だいじょうぶですか。あついですか。 |
| | (takes a sip) あちっ。(coughs)まずいです。 |
| とよたいちろう | シーッ。(laughs) |

Formal Romanization

Toyota Ichir Boku wa foto j narisuto desu.
 Ashur H . Sugoi.
 Toyota Ichir Ashur -san wa?
 Flight Attendant Black tea, coffee or Japanese tea?
 Ashur A, nihoncha, onegai shimasu.
 Flight Attendant Nihoncha desu ne.
 Hai, d zo. O-kyaku-sama wa?
 Toyota Ichir K cha, onegai shimasu.
 Flight Attendant O-sat to miruku wa?
 Toyota Ichir Onegai shimasu.
 (Takes a sip)
 Toyota Ichir Achi!
 Ashur Daij bu desu ka. Atsui desu ka.
 (takes a sip) Achi! (coughs) Mazui desu.
 Toyota Ichir Sh .(laughs)

English

Ichiro Toyota I'm a photojournalist.
 Ashley Oh, wow!
 Ichiro Toyota How about you?
 Flight Attendant Black tea, coffee, or Japanese tea?
 Ashley Oh, Japanese tea please.
 Flight Attendant Japanese tea, here you are. How about you, sir?
 Ichiro Toyota Black tea, please.
 Flight Attendant Would you like sugar and milk?
 Ichiro Toyota Yes, please.
 (takes a sip)
 Ichiro Toyota It's hot!
 Ashley Are you okay? It's hot? (takes a sip) It's hot! (coughs) It tastes awful.
 Ichiro Toyota Shhhh! (laughs)

Vocabulary

| Kanji | Kana | Romaji | English |
|-------|------|--------|---------|
|-------|------|--------|---------|

| | | | |
|------------|------------|----------------|------------------------------------|
| フォトジャーナリスト | フォトジャーナリスト | fotoj narisuto | photojournalist |
| すごい | すごい | sugoi | wow, great, amazing; Adj(i) |
| 日本茶 | にほんちゃ | Nihoncha | Japanese tea |
| お客様 | おきゃくさま | o-kyaku-sama | customer |
| 紅茶 | こうちゃ | k cha | black tea |
| 砂糖 | さとう | sat | sugar |
| ミルク | ミルク | miruku | milk |
| あちっ | あちっ | achi | It's hot! (from あつい /atsui) |
| 大丈夫 | だいじょうぶ | daij bu | all right, okay |
| まずい | まずい | mazui | tastes bad, distasteful; Adj(i) |
| 熱い | あつい | atsui | hot (thing) |

Vocabulary Sample Sentences

私は、フォトジャーナリストです。
東京はすごいです。
それは、日本茶ですか。
お客様、すみません。
ケーキと紅茶、お願いします。
砂糖、お願いします。
お砂糖とミルク、お願いします。
あちっ。この紅茶は熱い。
私は大丈夫です。
これは、まずいです。
紅茶は熱いですか。

I'm a photojournalist.
Tokyo is great.
Is that Japanese tea?
Excuse me, sir/ma'am.
Cake and tea, please.
I'd like sugar, please.
I'd like some sugar and milk, please.
It's hot! This tea is hot.
I'm all right.
This doesn't taste good.
Is the tea hot?

Grammar Points

Gengo Japanese #4 - Japanese Phrases You Use Everyday

あ、日本茶、お願いします。

A, Nihon-cha, onegai shimasu.

"Oh, Japanese tea please."

In this lesson, you will:

Learn how to ask for something using onegai shimasu (お願いします)

Learn how to use wa (は) to abbreviate questions

Using onegai shimasu (お願いします)

In the last lesson, we learned some common phrases that incorporate the phrase onegai shimasu (お願いします). This time we'll learn how to ask for something using onegai shimasu (お願いします) after a noun. Simply put onegai shimasu (お願いします) after the noun to ask for that item. The direct object particle o (を) can be put after the item being requested, but it is not necessary.

Construction

[Noun + (o) onegai shimasu (お願いします)]

Example from the dialogue:

| Item | (o) onegai shimasu | "English Translation" |
|----------------|------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 日本茶 (Nihoncha) | (を) お願いします onegai shimasu | "Japanese tea, please." |

More examples:

1. 紅茶(を)お願いします。
K cha (o) onegai shimasu.
"Black tea, please."
2. 砂糖(を)お願いします。
Sat (o) onegai shimasu.
"Sugar, please."

When you want two items, insert the particle to (と), meaning "and," between the items.

For example:

1. 日本茶とコーヒー(を)お願いします。
Nihoncha to k h (o) onegai shimasu.
"Japanese tea and coffee, please."

Using wa (は) to Abbreviate a Question

In spoken Japanese, it's very common to shorten phrases to only what is necessary. By leaving out what is already understood, your Japanese will sound more natural. Let's look at this example from the dialogue. Toyota-san stated his profession, and then asks Ashley about hers with the phrase:

1. アシュリーさんは？
Ashur -san wa?
"How about you, (Ashley)?"

Using someone's name and attaching wa (は) with rising intonation is a very common way to ask someone a question they have just asked you, or to ask someone about the topic being discussed. It's very similar to "How about ?" in English.

For example:

1. (when talking about drinks)
お客様は？
O-kyaku-sama wa?
"How about you, sir/ma'am?"
2. お砂糖とミルクは？
O-sat to miruku wa?
"Would you like sugar and milk?"

Vocabulary Building: Temperature-related Vocabulary

When it comes to talking about temperature, we use different words (or sometimes just different kanji) depending on whether you are talking about something being hot/cold to the touch, or hot/cold that you can feel in the atmosphere (as in the weather).

Words we use when talking about objects or liquids:

| Japanese | Romaji | English |
|----------|--------|---------|
| 熱い | atsui | "hot" |

| | | |
|-----|----------|------------|
| 冷たい | tsumetai | "cold" |
| 温かい | atatakai | "warm" |
| ぬるい | nurui | "lukewarm" |

Examples:

1. 熱いコーヒー
atsui k h
"hot coffee"
2. 冷たいビール
tsumetai b ru
"cold beer"

Words we use when talking about the temperature of the atmosphere:

| Japanese | Romaji | English |
|----------|----------|---------|
| 暑い | atsui | "hot" |
| 寒い | samui | "cold" |
| 暖かい | atatakai | "warm" |
| 涼しい | suzushii | "cool" |

Examples:

1. 今日は暑いです。
Ky wa atsui desu.
"It's hot today."
2. 今日は寒いですか？
Ky wa samui desu ka?
"Is it cold today?"

Cultural Insight

Japanese is Filled with Loan Words!

In the dialogue, we saw a lot of loan words, which are words adopted into Japanese from other languages. A few examples we saw are foto j narisuto ("photo journalist") and miruku ("milk"). These are examples of loan words taken from English that are pronounced using the syllables of Japanese. Because Japanese has a limited number of sounds to work with, however, a lot of the time these loan words do not closely resemble the original words they come from! Many times loan words exist to give a name to something that was a foreign

concept and didn't originally have a name in Japanese. An example of this is the loan word *fku*, meaning "fork," because there was no name for fork in Japanese. On the other hand, some loan words also co-exist with their Japanese counterparts. The word we saw in the dialogue, *miruku* ("milk"), is an example of this. The Japanese word for milk is *gy ny*, and we often refer to milk that comes in a carton as *gy ny*. Milk that we add to tea and other drinks, however, is often referred to as *miruku*.



Gengo Japanese S1

Welcome to Japan! Avoid Instant Immersion Shock with this Lesson

5

| | |
|---------------------|---|
| Formal Kanji | 2 |
| Formal Kana | 2 |
| Formal Romanization | 2 |
| English | 3 |
| Vocabulary | 3 |
| Grammar Points | 4 |
| Cultural Insight | 6 |

Formal Kanji

- パイロット 皆様、機長の日野でございます。
成田国際空港、八月十六日、日曜日。
時間は午後三時十分でございます。
天気は晴れ。気温は摂氏三十度でございます。
- アシュリー ええ？三十度？寒い・・・。
豊田一郎 いえ、暑いです。
摂氏三十度です。
- アシュリー せっし？
豊田一郎 摂氏はセルシウスです。
摂氏三十度は華氏八十六度です。

Formal Kana

- パイロット みなさま、きちょうのひのでございます。
なりたこくさいくこう、はちがつじゅうろくにち、にちようび
。
じかんはごごさんじじゅうぷんでございます。
てんきははれ。きおんはせっしさんじゅうどでございます。
- アシュリー ええ？さんじゅうど？さむい・・・。
とよたいちろう いえ、あついです。
せっしさんじゅうどです。
- アシュリー せっし？
とよたいちろう せっしはセルシウスです。
せっしさんじゅうどはかしはちじゅうろくどです。

Formal Romanization

- Pairotto Mina-sama, kich no Hino de gozaimasu.
Narita kokusai k k , hachi-gatsu j -roku-nichi, nichiy bi.
Jikan wa gogo san-ji ju-ppun de gozaimasu.
Tenki wa hare. Kion wa sesshi san-j -do de gozaimasu.

Ashur ? San-j -do? Samui....
 Toyota Ichir , atsui desu.
 Sesshi san-j -do desu.
 Ashur Sesshi?
 Toyota Ichir Sesshi wa serushiasu desu.
 Sesshi san-j -do wa kashi hachi-j -roku-do desu.

English

Pilot Hello everyone, this is your captain Hino speaking.
 At Narita Airport, it's Sunday, August 16th.
 The local time is ten after three in the afternoon.
 It's sunny, and the temperature is 30 degrees Celsius.

Ashley What? 30 degrees?? That's cold...
 Ichiro Toyota No, it's hot!
 It's 30 degrees "sesshi."
 Ashley What's "sesshi?"
 Ichiro Toyota "Sesshi" means Celsius.
 30 degrees Celsius is 86 degrees Fahrenheit.

Vocabulary

| Kanji | Kana | Romaji | English |
|-------|---------|-------------|--------------------------------|
| 皆様 | みなさま | mina-sama | everyone, ladies and gentlemen |
| 機長 | きちょう | kich | plane captain |
| 成田 | なりた | Narita | Narita |
| 国際空港 | こくさいくこう | kokusai k k | international airport |
| 時間 | じかん | jikan | time |
| 天気 | てんき | tenki | weather |
| 晴れ | はれ | hare | sunny |
| 寒い | さむい | samui | cold |
| 暑い | あつい | atsui | hot |
| 午後 | ごご | gogo | afternoon, p.m. |
| 日曜日 | にちようび | nichiy bi | Sunday |
| 気温 | きおん | kion | temperature |
| 度 | ど | do | degree |

| | | | |
|----|-----|--------|------------|
| 摂氏 | せっし | sesshi | Celsius |
| 華氏 | かし | kashi | Fahrenheit |

Vocabulary Sample Sentences

皆様、おはようございます。
 今日の機長は、古田です。
 私の出身は成田です。
 成田空港は国際空港です。
 出発の時間は、4時です。
 ロンドンの天気は晴れですか。
 明日は、晴れですか。
 カナダは寒いです。
 今日は暑いです。
 今 午後4時です。
 明日は日曜日です。
 今日の気温は？
 今日は、30度です。
 今日の気温は、摂氏30度です。
 摂氏100度は華氏212度です。

Good morning, ladies and gentlemen.
 The captain today is Furuta.
 I'm from Narita.
 Narita Airport is an international airport.
 Departure is at 4:00.
 Is it sunny in London?
 Is it going to be sunny tomorrow?
 It's cold in Canada.
 It's hot today.
 It's 4:00pm now.
 Tomorrow is Sunday.
 What's the temperature today?
 The temperature is 30 degree today.
 Today's temperature is 30 degrees celsius.
 100 degrees Celcius is 212 degrees
 Fahrenheit.

Grammar Points

Gengo Japanese Lesson #5 - Welcome to Japan! Avoid Instant Immersion Shock with this Lesson

皆様、機長の日野でございます。

Mina-sama, kich no Hino de gozaimasu.

"Hello everyone, this is your captain Hino speaking."

In this lesson, you will:

- Learn how to use the copula and become familiar with its different forms
- Learn how to use the particle no (の) to talk about one's title or company they belong to

Using the Copula

In Japanese, we use the copula in two ways. The meaning we will focus on in this lesson is that of "is," as in "I am," "you are," "he/she/it is," and so on.

In Japanese, there are three different politeness levels, which means there are three different variations of the copula:

| Politeness Level | Romaji | Japanese |
|------------------|--------------|----------|
| Informal | da | だ |
| Formal | desu | です |
| Extra formal | de gozaimasu | でございます |

We use da (だ) in informal situations, while we use desu (です) in formal situations. We reserve de gozaimasu (でございます) for extra formal situations. In the dialogue, we heard the formal desu (です) and extra formal de gozaimasu (でございます). Toyota-san used desu when talking to Ashley and the pilot used de gozaimasu when making his announcement to the passengers.

Examples from the Dialog

Desu (です):

1. 豊田一郎: 摂氏はセルシウスです。
Toyota Ichir : Sesshi wa serushiasu desu.
Ichiro Toyota: "'Sesshi' means Celsius."

De gozaimasu (でございます):

1. パイロット: 皆様、機長の日野でございます。
Pairotto: Mina-sama, kich no Hino de gozaimasu.
Pilot: "Hello everyone, this is your captain Hino speaking."

Using no (の)

Before, we learned how to use no (の) to show possession. Now we will learn how to use it to indicate one's title or the company that they belong to. You can give your title or company name followed by no (の) and then your name.

[title/company] no [name]

In the example from the dialogue, the pilot introduced himself with his title, kich (機長), the particle no (の), and his name Hino (日野).

1. 機長の日野でございます。
Kich no Hino de gozaimasu.
"This is your captain Hino speaking"

When Peter Galante of JapanesePod101 introduces himself, he could say:

1. (私は) JapanesePod101.comのピーターギャランテです。
(Watashi wa) Japan zu poddo ichi maru ichi dotto komu no P t Gyarante desu.
"I'm Peter Galante of JapanesePod101.com."

In the Appendix

In this lesson, we saw some phrases that are related to dates and time, as well as a counter for temperature:

八月十六日 - hachi-gatsu j -roku-nichi - August 16th
日曜日 - nichiy bi - Sunday
午後三時十分 - gogo san-ji ju-ppun - 3:10 P.M.
30度 - sanj -do - 30 degrees

For more detailed information on these phrases, please check the following Appendix lessons: Time: Hours/Minutes (Appendix #2), Time: Months and Dates (Appendix #3), Days of the Week (Appendix #4), and Counters (Appendix #7).

Cultural Insight

Measurements in Japan

Japan adopted the metric system around the 1960s, which means that meters are used for measuring length, grams are used for measuring weight, liters are used for measuring volume, and so on. In the dialog, we saw that Japan uses the Celsius system of measuring temperature. If you are familiar with the Fahrenheit system, it might take a little while to get

used to, but it's a good idea to learn the Celsius system if you want to be able to understand the weather forecast!





Gengo Japanese S1

Don't Miss Your Chance! How to Close the Deal in Japanese

6

| | |
|---------------------|---|
| Formal Kanji | 2 |
| Formal Kana | 2 |
| Formal Romanization | 2 |
| English | 3 |
| Vocabulary | 3 |
| Grammar Points | 4 |
| Cultural Insight | 6 |

Formal Kanji

| | |
|-------|-------------------------------------|
| 係員 | Foreign passport holders this way. |
| 豊田一郎 | あ、じゃあ。 |
| アシュリー | ありがとうございました。 |
| | それから、これは私の名刺です。 |
| 豊田一郎 | ありがとうございます。 |
| | へえー、アシュリーさんはネッサン自動車のマネージャーですか。 |
| | 。 |
| アシュリー | はい。・・・豊田さん、名刺、ありますか。 |
| 豊田一郎 | はい、あります。 |
| | 名刺・・・名刺・・・。あれ？ありません。 |
| | すみません。じゃ、(scribbling sound) はい。どうぞ。 |
| | 僕の、携帯とメアドです。連絡ください。 |
| | それでは。 |
| アシュリー | はい。じゃあ、また。 |

Formal Kana

| | |
|---------|-------------------------------------|
| かかりいん | Foreign passport holders this way. |
| とよだいちろう | あ、じゃあ。 |
| アシュリー | ありがとうございました。 |
| | それから、これはわたしのめいしです。 |
| とよだいちろう | ありがとうございます。 |
| | へえー、アシュリーさんはネッサンじどうしゃのマネージャーですか。 |
| アシュリー | はい。・・・とよださん、めいし、ありますか。 |
| とよだいちろう | はい、あります。 |
| | めいし・・・めいし・・・。あれ？ありません。 |
| | すみません。じゃ、(scribbling sound) はい。どうぞ。 |
| | ぼくの、けいたいとメアドです。れんらくください。 |
| | それでは。 |
| アシュリー | はい。じゃあ、また。 |

Formal Romanization

Kakariin Foreign passport holders this way.
 Toyota Ichir A, j .
 Ashur Arigat gozaimashita.
 Sore kara, kore wa watashi no meishi desu.
 Toyota Ichir Arigat gozaimasu.
 H , Ashur -san wa Nesson jid sha no man j desu ka.
 Ashur Hai.... Toyota-san, meishi, arimasu ka.
 Toyota Ichir Hai, arimasu.
 Meishi... meishi.... Are? Arimasen.
 Sumimasen. Ja,(scribbling sound) hai. D zo.
 Boku no, keitai to meado desu. Renraku kudasai.
 Sore de wa.
 Ashur Hai. J , Mata.

English

Clerk Foreign passport holders this way.
 Ichiro Toyota All right, well...
 Ashley Thank you very much.
 Here's my business card.
 Ichiro Toyota Thank you!
 Oh, so you're a manager at Nesson Automotive?
 Ashley Yes...Toyota-san, do you have a business card?
 Ichiro Toyota Yes, I do!
 Business card...business card...huh? Uh oh, I don't!
 I'm sorry. Okay, well...here you are! (scribbling sound)
 My cell phone number and e-mail address. Contact me
 sometime!
 See you around.
 Ashley Okay! Bye.

Vocabulary

| Kanji | Kana | Romaji | English |
|-------|------|-----------|---------------|
| それから | それから | sore kara | then, and |
| 名刺 | めいし | meishi | business card |
| あれ | あれ | are | Hmm?, Huh? |
| へえー | へえー | h | oh |

| | | | |
|--------|--------|---------|--------------------------|
| 自動車 | じどうしゃ | jid sha | automobile |
| マネージャー | マネージャー | man j | manager |
| 携帯 | けいたい | keitai | cell phone, mobile phone |
| メアド | めあど | meado | e-mail address |
| 連絡 | れんらく | renraku | contact |

Vocabulary Sample Sentences

私は、鈴木です。それから、出身は東京です I'm Suzuki, and I'm from Tokyo.

| | |
|---------------|---------------------------------|
| 。どうぞ、私の名刺です。 | Here is my business card. |
| あれ？これは私のですか。 | Huh, is this mine? |
| へえー。パイロットですか。 | Oh, you're a pilot? |
| これは、私の自動車です。 | This is my car. |
| マネージャーはどこですか。 | Where's the manager. |
| 携帯ありますか。 | Do you have a cell phone? |
| これは、私のメアドです。 | This is my e-mail address. |
| 明日、連絡ください。 | Please give me a call tomorrow. |

Grammar Points

Gengo Japanese #6 - Don't Miss Your Chance! How to Close the Deal in Japanese

豊田さん、名刺、ありますか。

Toyota-san, meishi, arimasu ka.

"Toyota-san, do you have a business card?"

In this lesson, you will learn:

How to talk about the existence of inanimate objects with arimasu (あります)

How to ask for something with kudasai (ください)

Talking About Existence with arimasu (あります)

Arimasu (あります) is a verb that means "to be," "to exist," or "to have." It is important to note that this only applies to inanimate objects. For animate objects such as people or animals, we use the verb imasu (います). For more information on the differences and usage of these two words, see Lesson 17.

| | | | |
|-----------------|---------------------|--|---------------------------------|
| Affirmative | あります arimasu | 名刺(が)あります。 Meishi (ga) arimasu. | "I have a business card." |
| Negative | ありません arimasen | 名刺(が)ありません。 Meishi (ga) arimasen. | "I don't have a business card." |
| Yes/No Question | ありますか arimasu ka | 名刺(が)ありますか。 Meishi (ga) arimasu ka? | "Do you have a business card?" |

Examples from the Dialogue

1. アシュリー: 豊田さん、名刺、ありますか。
Ashur : Toyota-san, meishi, arimasu ka.
Ashley: "Toyota-san, do you have a business card?"
2. 豊田一郎: はい、あります。名刺・・・名刺・・・。あれ？ありません。
Toyota Ichir : Hai, arimasu. Meishi... Meishi... are? Arimasen.
Ichiro Toyota: "Yes, I do! Business card...business card...huh? Uh oh, I don't!"

Construction

| | | |
|--------------------------|-----------------------|--------------------------|
| "Excuse me." | "Do you have ____?" | |
| すみません。 [Sumimasen.] | お砂糖、[o-sat] "sugar" | ありますか。 [arimasu ka?] |
| | 時間 [jikan] "time" | |
| | ペン [pen] "pen" | |

Asking for Something Using kudasai (ください)

In the dialogue, Ichiro asked Ashley to contact him using the word kudasai (ください):

1. 豊田一郎: 連絡ください。
Toyota Ichir : Renraku kudasai.
Ichiro Toyota: "Contact me sometime!"

To ask for something, we can use:

[object] (o) kudasai

We put the object particle o (を) plus kudasai (ください) after what we want, but keep in mind that we can omit o (を) particle.

| Object You Want | ...(o) kudasai |
|--------------------------|----------------|
| 紅茶 [k cha] "black tea" | (を) ください。 |
| 電話 [denwa] "call" | |
| お水 [o-mizu] "water" | |
| メニュー [meny] "menu" | |

Cultural Insight

Business Card Etiquette

Exchanging business cards is a very important practice in the Japanese business world. Unlike in Western countries where business cards might be exchanged at the ending of a meeting to share contact information, in Japan, exchanging business cards is an integral part of the introduction process. If you have your own business card, you should present it to the other person as you introduce yourself. When handing over your business card, it is important to use both hands and hold it so that the writing is readable to the other person. When receiving someone's business card, you should also use both hands to accept it, and whatever you do, don't put it in your pocket! It might be a good idea to follow the other person's lead and put his or her business card away at the same time he or she puts your business card away.



Gengo Japanese S1

Don't Answer this Question Incorrectly!

7

| | |
|---------------------|---|
| Formal Kanji | 2 |
| Formal Kana | 2 |
| Formal Romanization | 2 |
| English | 3 |
| Vocabulary | 3 |
| Grammar Points | 4 |
| Cultural Insight | 7 |

Formal Kanji

| | |
|-------|--|
| 係員 | 次の人。どうぞ。 |
| アシュリー | こんにちは。 |
| 係員 | こんにちは。パスポート、お願いします。 |
| | お仕事ですか。 |
| アシュリー | ・・・すみません。もう一度、お願いします。 |
| 係員 | 仕事ですか。Business trip?(ビジネストリップ?) |
| アシュリー | ・・・あ、はい。出張です。 |
| 係員 | 初めてですか。 |
| アシュリー | ・・・すみません、ゆっくりお願いします。 |
| 係員 | 日本は初めてですか。First time in Japan? (ファーストタイムインジャパン?) |
| アシュリー | いいえ、違います。 |
| 係員 | 滞在期間は。 |
| アシュリー | ・・・(sigh)すみません。英語でお願いします。 |

Formal Kana

| | |
|-------|--|
| かかりいん | つぎのひと。どうぞ。 |
| アシュリー | こんにちは。 |
| かかりいん | こんにちは。パスポート、おねがいします。 |
| | おしごとですか。 |
| アシュリー | ・・・すみません。もういちど、おねがいします。 |
| かかりいん | しごとですか。Business trip?(ビジネストリップ?) |
| アシュリー | ・・・あ、はい。しゅっちょうです。 |
| かかりいん | はじめてですか。 |
| アシュリー | ・・・すみません、ゆっくり、おねがいします。 |
| かかりいん | にほんははじめてですか。First time in Japan? (ファーストタイムインジャパン?) |
| アシュリー | いいえ、ちがいます。 |
| かかりいん | たいざいきかんは。 |
| アシュリー | ・・・(sigh)すみません。えいごでおねがいします。 |

Formal Romanization

Kakariin Tsugi no hito. D zo.
 Ashur Konnichiwa.
 Kakariin Konnichiwa. Pasup to, onegai shimasu.
 O-shigoto desu ka.
 Ashur ... Sumimasen. M ichi-do, onegai shimasu.
 Kakariin Shigoto desu ka. Business trip?(Bijinesu torippu?)
 Ashur ... A, hai. Shucch desu.
 Kakariin Hajimete desu ka.
 Ashur ... Sumimasen, yukkuri, onegai shimasu.
 Kakariin Nihon wa hajimete desu ka. First time in Japan?(F suto taimu in Japan?)
 Ashur lie, chigaimasu.
 Kakariin Taizai kikan wa.
 Ashur ...(sigh) Sumimasen. Eigo de onegai shimasu.

English

Clerk Next in line, please.
 Ashley Hello.
 Clerk Hello. Passport, please.
 Are you here on business?
 Ashley I'm sorry, could you say that once more please?
 Clerk Are you here on business? Business trip?
 Ashley ...Oh, yes. I'm on a business trip.
 Clerk Is it your first time in Japan?
 Ashley ...I'm sorry; could you say that a bit slower please?
 Clerk Is it your first time in Japan? First time in Japan?
 Ashley No, it's not.
 Clerk And how long will you be staying?
 Ashley ...(sigh) I'm sorry, could you please use English?

Vocabulary

| Kanji | Kana | Romaji | English |
|-------|--------|----------|---------------|
| 次 | つぎ | tsugi | next |
| 人 | ひと | hito | person |
| パスポート | ぱすぽーと | pasup to | passport |
| 出張 | しゅっちょう | shucch | business trip |

| | | | |
|------|---------|--------------|----------------------|
| 日本 | にほん | Nihon | Japan |
| 滞在期間 | たいざいきかん | taizai kikan | length of one's stay |
| 英語 | えいご | eigo | English |
| 仕事 | しごと | shigoto | work, job |
| 初めて | はじめて | hajimete | for the first time |

Vocabulary Sample Sentences

次は私です。
 次の人、お願いします。
 パスポート、ありますか。
 出張ですか。
 出身は、日本です。
 滞在期間は、1週間です。
 英語の地図をください。
 仕事をください。
 出張は初めてですか。

I'm next.
 The next person, please.
 Do you have a passport?
 Are you here on business?
 I'm from Japan.
 I'm going to stay for a week.
 Please give me a map in English.
 Please give me a job.
 Is this your first time going on a business trip?

Grammar Points

Gengo Japanese Lesson #7 - Don't answer this question incorrectly!

英語でお願いします。

Eigo de onegai shimasu.

"Could you please use English?"

In this lesson, you will:

Review the different usages of onegai shimasu (お願いします)

Learn the word hajimete (初めて) to talk about doing something for the first time

Learn how to use the particle de (で) to talk about the means used to do something

Review of onegai shimasu (お願いします)

We saw many uses of onegai shimasu (お願いします) in the dialogue of this lesson. We first reviewed this phrase in Basic Bootcamp Lesson 3. Let's review some of these expressions that use onegai shimasu (お願いします).

Examples from the Dialogue

When asking for something:

1. パスポート、お願いします。
Pasupo to, onegai shimasu.
"Passport, please."

When asking for something to be repeated:

1. もう一度、お願いします。
Mō ichi-do, onegai shimasu.
"Could you say that once more, please?"

When asking someone to say something slower:

1. ゆっくり、お願いします。
Yukkuri, onegai shimasu.
"Could you say that a bit slower, please?"

Talking About Firsts with hajimete (初めて)

Hajimete (初めて) is an adverb that means, "first" or "first time." When combined with desu ka (ですか), it creates a question that means "Is it/this your first time?" We can put the topic followed by the particle wa (は) in the beginning of the sentence to clarify what is being asked about.

| Topic | Topic Particle | First Time | Copula | Question Particle |
|-------------|----------------|-----------------|------------|-------------------|
| [Something] | wa は | hajimete 初めて | desu です | ka か |

In the dialogue, the clerk at the airport asks Ashley if it's her first time in Japan by using this phrase:

1. 日本は初めてですか。
Nihon wa hajimete desu ka.
"Is it your first time in Japan?"

Other Examples:

1. ニューヨークは初めてですか。
Ny Ū ku wa hajimete desu ka.
"Is it your first time in New York?"
2. 日本茶は初めてですか。
Nihoncha wa hajimete desu ka.
"Is it your first time drinking Japanese tea?"

Particle de (で)

We can use the particle de (で) with a noun to talk about means of transportation or tools used to do something. As we saw in the dialogue, this particle can be used with languages when talking about using them as a tool for communication:

1. 英語をお願いします。
Eigo de onegai shimasu.
"Could you please use English?" (literally, "In English, please.")

In this phrase, eigo de (英語で) means, "in English" or "using English."

Another example:

1. 日本語をお願いします。
Nihongo de onegai shimasu.
"Could you please use Japanese?" (literally, "In Japanese, please.")

Vocabulary Building: Phrases using taizai (滞在)

In this dialogue, Ashley didn't understand the meaning of the word taizai kikan (滞在期間), which means "length of stay." Taizai (滞在) refers to one's stay and is an important word to remember if you plan on visiting Japan. Let's take a look at some common compound words that use taizai (滞在).

| Japanese | English | Meaning |
|----------|---------|---------|
| | | |

| | | |
|-------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 滞在期間 taizai kikan | length of stay | 期間 = kikan = "length of time" |
| 滞在時間 taizai jikan | length of stay | 時間 = jikan = "time" |
| 滞在場所 taizai basho | place where one is staying | 場所 = basho = "place" |
| 滞在先 taizai saki | place where one is staying | 先 = saki = "destination" |
| 滞在目的 taizai mokuteki | purpose of one's visit | 目的 = mokuteki = "purpose" |

In the Appendix

In this lesson, we learned the words for English language (eigo, 英語) and Japanese language (Nihon-go, 日本語). For more detailed information on language vocabulary, please check the following Appendix lesson: Country, Nationality, Language (Appendix #11).



Cultural Insight

Immigration and Customs

When you arrive at immigration in Japan, you will probably be asked a few questions about the purpose of your visit and so on. At the larger international airports in Japan, you'll find that a lot of the staff at immigration and customs speak English, and you may not even need to use Japanese. Since you are studying Japanese, though, you might want to try using Japanese. If you get stuck, you can do what Ashley did in the conversation and ask them to use English.



Gengo Japanese S1

Get What You Want Using Japanese!

8

| | |
|---------------------|---|
| Formal Kanji | 2 |
| Formal Kana | 2 |
| Formal Romanization | 3 |
| English | 3 |
| Vocabulary | 3 |
| Grammar Points | 4 |
| Cultural Insight | 9 |

Formal Kanji

| | |
|-------------|--|
| 客 係員 | 羽田空港まで、大人一枚、子供二枚。 4500円です。 はい、チケットです。 出発は3時45分です。 次の人、どうぞ。 |
| アシュリー 係員 | 品川プリンセスホテルまで。大人一名。 3000円です。 |
| アシュリー 係員 | このデビットカード大丈夫ですか。 すみません。そのカードは、駄目です。 |
| アシュリー 係員 | このクレジットカードは大丈夫ですか。 はい。大丈夫です。 署名お願いします。 |
| アシュリー 係員 | しょめい・・・？ サインお願いします。 Your signature please. (ユア シグニチャー プリーズ) |

Formal Kana

| | |
|----------------|---|
| きゃく かかりいん | はねだくこうまで、おとないちまい、こどもにまい。 よんせんごひゃくえんです。 はい、チケットです。 しゅっぱつはさんじよんじゅうごふんです。 つぎのひと、どうぞ。 |
| アシュリー かかりいん | しながわプリンセスホテルまで。おとないちめい。 さんぜんえんです。 |
| アシュリー かかりいん | このデビットカードだいじょうぶですか。 すみません。そのカードは、だめです。 |
| アシュリー かかりいん | このクレジットカードはだいじょうぶですか。 はい。だいじょうぶです。 しょめいおねがいします。 |
| アシュリー かかりいん | しょめい・・・？ サインおねがいします。 Your signature please. (ユア シグニチャー プリーズ) |

Formal Romanization

| | |
|-------------------|---|
| Kyaku Kakariin | Haneda k k made, otona ichi-mai, kodomo ni-mai. Yon-sen-go-hyaku-en desu. Hai, chiketto desu. Shuppatsu wa san-ji yonj -go-fun desu. Tsugi no hito, d zo. |
| Ashur Kakariin | Shinagawa purinsesu hoteru made. Otona ichi-mei. San-zen-en desu. |
| Ashur Kakariin | Kono debitto k do daij bu desu ka. Sumimasen. Sono k do wa, dame desu. |
| Ashur Kakariin | Kono kurejitto k do wa daij bu desu ka. Hai. Daij bu desu. Shomei onegai shimasu. |
| Ashur Kakariin | Shomei...? Sain onegai shimasu. Your signature please.(Yua shigunich pur zu) |

English

| | |
|-------------------|--|
| Customer Clerk | One adult ticket, two child tickets for Haneda Airport. That'll be 4500 yen. Here are the tickets. It departs at three-forty five. Next in line, please. |
| Ashley Clerk | One adult ticket for Shinagawa Princess Hotel. That'll be 3000 yen. |
| Ashley Clerk | Can I use this debit card? I'm sorry you can't use that card. |
| Ashley Clerk | Can I use this credit card? Yes, this one is okay. Your "shomei" please. |
| Ashley Clerk | "Shomei...?" Your signature please. |

Vocabulary

| Kanji | Kana | Romaji | English |
|-------|------|--------|---------|
|-------|------|--------|---------|

| | | | |
|----------|----------|----------------|---------------------------|
| 羽田空港 | はねだくこう | Haneda k k | Haneda airport |
| 大人 | おとな | otona | adult |
| 一枚 | いちまい | ichi-mai | one sheet of paper |
| 子供 | こども | kodomo | child, children |
| 円 | えん | en | yen |
| 品川 | しながわ | Shinagawa | Shinagawa (area of Tokyo) |
| ホテル | ホテル | hoteru | hotel |
| 一名 | いちめい | ichi-mei | one (person) |
| カード | カード | k do | card |
| 駄目 | だめ | dame | No, bad |
| クレジットカード | クレジットカード | kurejitto k do | credit card |
| 署名 | しょめい | shomei | signature |
| サイン | サイン | sain | signature, autograph |

Vocabulary Sample Sentences

羽田空港はどこですか。
大人一枚、おねがいします。
大人のチケット一枚ください。
これは、私の子供です。
1ドルは、何円ですか。
品川まで、お願いします。
横浜ホテルまで、お願いします。
大人二名、子供一名。
カードは大丈夫ですか。
子供は、駄目です。
これは、私のクレジットカードです。
署名お願いします。
サインください。

Where is Haneda airport?
One adult ticket, please.
One adult ticket, please.
This is my child.
How much yen is it to one dollar?
To Shinagawa, please.
To Yokohama Hotel, please. (To a taxi driver)
Two adults and one child.
Is it okay to pay by credit card?
Children are not allowed.
This is my credit card.
Your signature please.
Can I have your autograph?

Grammar Points

Gengo Japanese #8 - Get What You Want Using Japanese!

このクレジットカードは大丈夫ですか。

Kono kurejitto k do wa daij bu desu ka.

"Can I use this credit card?"

In this lesson, you will:

Learn useful vocabulary for buying tickets

Learn how to use the word daij bu (大丈夫)

Learn a series of important words known as ko-so-a-do words

Buying Tickets

In the dialogue, Ashley successfully bought tickets for the Limousine Bus from Narita Airport to Shinagawa Princess Hotel. Let's take a look at some vocabulary and phrases used when buying tickets.

The first two vocabulary words are known as counters. Japanese has many counters, which are words that we use to count specific items. The corresponding counter depends on the appearance or make up of the item. For example, there are different counters for sheets of paper and bottles because they are different in shape. Counters always come after the number, which comes after the object being counted.

Counters for Paper:

| Japanese | Meaning |
|--------------|--|
| ~ 枚 ~ mai | counter for sheets of paper (including tickets) |

Mai (枚) is a counter that we use to count sheets of paper, which includes tickets.

| Japanese | Romaji | English |
|----------|----------|-----------------------|
| 一枚 | ichi-mai | one sheet of paper |
| 二枚 | ni-mai | two sheets of paper |
| 三枚 | san-mai | three sheets of paper |
| 四枚 | yon-mai | four sheets of paper |

Counters for People:

| Japanese | Meaning |
|--------------|--------------------|
| ~ 名 ~ mei | counter for people |

Mei (名) is a counter that we use to count people. We usually use this counter for people in

polite situations.

| Japanese | Romaji | English |
|----------|----------|--------------|
| 一名 | ichi-mei | one person |
| 二名 | ni-mei | two people |
| 三名 | san-mei | three people |
| 四名 | yon-mei | four people |

Made ("for (place)")

| Japanese | Meaning |
|----------------|--------------------|
| ~ まで ~ made | for (place)/ until |

Made (まで) literally means "until," but in this case it is commonly translated as "for (place)."

Examples:

1. 成田空港まで
Narita k k made
"for Narita Airport"
2. 東京駅まで
T ky eki made
"for Tokyo Station"

| Japanese | Meaning |
|--------------|---------|
| 大人 otona | adult |
| 子供 kodomo | child |

Examples:

1. 大人一枚
otona ichi-mai
"one adult ticket"
2. 子供二枚
kodomo ni-mai
"two child tickets"

Using Daij bu (大丈夫) and Dame (だめ)

Daij bu and dame are two common and useful words that you will encounter a lot in Japanese. Daij bu (大丈夫) means "okay" or "all right," while dame (だめ) has the opposite meaning and means "no good," "not okay," and "useless." These can refer to states ("I'm okay," "I'm not okay") or actions ("It's okay to _____," "It's not okay to _____").

To say that something is okay or not okay (depending on the context, this can mean a variety of things), we use:

| Topic | Topic Particle | "okay" / "not okay" | Copula |
|---------------|----------------|----------------------------|------------|
| [something] | は wa | 大丈夫 / だめ daij bu / dame | です desu |

To ask whether something is okay or not, we simply add the question particle ka (か):

| Topic | Topic Particle | "okay" / "not okay" | Copula | Question Particle |
|---------------|----------------|----------------------------|------------|-------------------|
| [something] | は wa | 大丈夫 / だめ daij bu / dame | です desu | か ka |

Let's look at this exchange from the dialogue:

1. アシュリー: このデビットカード大丈夫ですか。
Ashur: Kono debitto k do wa daij bu desu ka?
Ashley: "Can I use this debit card?" (literally, "Is this debit card okay?")
2. 係員: すみません。そのカードは、駄目です。
Kakariin: Sumimasen. Sono k do wa, dame desu.
Clerk: "I'm sorry; you can't use that credit card." (literally, "I'm sorry, that card is no good.")

Ko-so-a-do (こそあど) Words

In Lesson #3, we touched briefly on Ko-so-a-do words, which are also known as demonstrative words. These are words that show what you are talking about. In Japanese, there are three main categories ("this," "that," and "that over there") and one category for questions. Let's review these categories and take a look at a new set of Ko-so-a-do words.

The prefix tells us a location:

| Prefix | Location |
|---------|---------------------------------------|
| こ ko | here, near |
| そ so | there, not far off |
| あ a | there, at a distance |
| ど do | (not location but question marker) |

Examples:

| Japanese | English |
|------------|-------------------|
| これ kore | this |
| それ sore | that |
| あれ are | that (over there) |
| どれ dore | which |

Examples:

1. これは日本茶です。
Kore wa Nihoncha desu.
"This is Japanese tea."
2. それは紅茶です。
Sore wa k cha desu.
"That's black tea."

The following words also mean "this" and "that" but must be followed by a noun.

| Japanese | English |
|--------------------------|-------------|
| この (noun) kono (noun) | this (noun) |
| その (noun) sono (noun) | that (noun) |

| | |
|--------------------------|------------------------|
| あの (noun) ano (noun) | that (noun) over there |
| どの (noun) dono (noun) | which (noun) |

Examples:

1. このコーヒーは熱いです。
Kono koh wa atsui desu.
"This coffee is hot."
2. そのカードはだめです。
Sono k do wa dame desu.
"You can't use that card."

In the Appendix

In this lesson, we introduced the counter words for flat objects (mai, 枚), and people (mei, 名). For more detailed information on these and other counters, please check the following Appendix lesson: Counters (Appendix #7).



Cultural Insight

Using Money in Japan

The monetary unit for Japan is yen, known as en (円) in Japanese. Throughout Japan you will see both the international symbol for yen (¥) as well as the kanji for en (円). Japanese coins come in denominations of 1 yen, 5 yen, 10 yen, 50 yen, 100 yen, and 500 yen. Paper bills come in denominations of 1,000 yen, 5,000 yen, and 10,000 yen (2,000 yen bills are rare but do exist). Japan is still very much a cash-based society, which means you will not be able to use your credit card everywhere, and there will be even fewer places that will take a debit card. In major stores you shouldn't have any problem using a credit card, but make sure that you always have cash on hand just in case. Don't hesitate to ask if you can use a credit or debit card using the phrases from this lesson!



Gengo Japanese S1

Your One Stop Shop for All Your Japanese Needs

9

| | |
|---------------------|---|
| Formal Kanji | 2 |
| Formal Kana | 2 |
| Formal Romanization | 2 |
| English | 3 |
| Vocabulary | 3 |
| Grammar Points | 4 |
| Cultural Insight | 8 |

Formal Kanji

店員 いらっしゃいませ。
 アシュリー このサンドイッチ一つと、このクッキーを二つください。
 ...すみません、これは、何ですか？
 店員 それは、『てんむす』です。おいしいですよ。
 てんぷらとおむすびです。
 アシュリー じゃ、それを二個、ください。
 店員 サンドイッチ一つ、クッキー二つ、てんむす二つ...
 お会計、８９０円です。
 アシュリー え？すみません。いくらですか。
 店員 ８９０円です。
 アシュリー はっぴゃく、きゅうじゅう円... じゃ、はい、千円。
 店員 おつり、１１０円です。
 ありがとうございます。

Formal Kana

てんいん いらっしゃいませ。
 アシュリー このサンドイッチひとつと、このクッキーをふたつください。
 ...すみません、これは、なんですか？
 てんいん それは、『てんむす』です。おいしいですよ。
 てんぷらとおむすびです。
 アシュリー じゃ、それをにこ、ください。
 てんいん サンドイッチひとつ、クッキーふたつ、てんむすふたつ...
 おかいけい、はっぴゃくきゅうじゅうえんです。
 アシュリー え？すみません。いくらですか。
 てんいん はっぴゃくきゅうじゅうえんです。
 アシュリー はっぴゃく、きゅうじゅうえん... じゃ、はい、せんえん。
 てんいん おつり、ひゃくじゅうえんです。
 ありがとうございます。

Formal Romanization

Ten'in Irasshaimase.
 Ashur Kono sandoicchi hitotsu to, kono kukk o futatsu kudasai.

... Sumimasen, kore wa, nan desu ka?
 Ten'in Sore wa, "Tenmusu" desu. Oishii desu yo.
 Tempura to o-musubi desu.
 Ashur Ja, sore o ni-ko, kudasai.
 Ten'in Sandoicchi hitotsu, kukk futatsu, tenmusu futatsu...
 o-kaikai, ha-ppyaku-ky -j -en desu.
 Ashur E? Sumimasen. Ikura desu ka.
 Ten'in Ha-ppyaku-ky -j -en desu.
 Ashur Ha-ppyaku, ky -j -en... Ja, hai, sen-en.
 Ten'in O-tsuru, hyaku-j -en desu.
 Arigat gozaimashita.

English

Clerk Welcome.
 Ashley I'd like one of these sandwiches and two cookies, please.
 Excuse me, what is this?
 Clerk That's "tenmusu." It's really good!
 It's tempura and musubi.
 Ashley Okay, I'll take two of those...
 Clerk One sandwich, two cookies, and two tenmusu...
 your total is 890 yen.
 Ashley Huh? I'm sorry, how much is it?
 Clerk 890 yen.
 Ashley Eight-hundred ninety yen...okay, here's 1000 yen.
 Clerk Your change is 110 yen.
 Thank you!

Vocabulary

| Kanji | Kana | Romaji | English |
|--------|--------|------------|------------------------|
| おいしい | おいしい | oishii | delicious |
| いくら | いくら | ikura | how much |
| おつり | おつり | o-tsuru | change |
| サンドイッチ | サンドイッチ | sandoicchi | sandwich |
| クッキー | クッキー | kukk | cookie |
| てんむす | てんむす | tenmusu | rice ball with tempura |
| おむすび | おむすび | omusubi | rice ball |

| | | | |
|------|-------|-----------|-----------------------------------|
| てんぷら | てんぷら | tempura | tempura, Japanese deep-fried food |
| 二個 | にこ | ni-ko | two (small objects) |
| 会計 | かいけい | kaikai | check, bill |
| 何 | なに、なん | nani, nan | what |

Vocabulary Sample Sentences

イギリスのクッキーはおいしい。
 おつりはいくらですか。
 おつり、ありますか。
 サンドイッチありますか。
 クッキー8個ください。
 おむすび一個、いくらですか。
 てんぷらは日本の料理です。
 これを二個ください。
 会計、おねがいします。
 ラッシーは何ですか。

British cookies are delicious.
 How much is the change?
 Do you have change?
 Are there sandwiches?
 Eight cookies, please.
 How much does one rice ball cost?
 Tempura is a Japanese dish.
 Two of these, please.
 Check, please.
 What's lassie?

Grammar Points

Gengo Japanese Lesson #9 - Your one stop shop for all your Japanese needs

すみません。いくらですか。

Sumimasen. Ikura desu ka.

"I'm sorry, how much is it?"

In this lesson, you will:

Review some crucial questions words ("what" and "how much")

Learn some useful expressions for buying something

Review of Question Words

In the dialogue, we saw two vital question words: nan (何), meaning "what," and ikura (いくら), meaning "how much."

1. アシュリー: これは、何ですか？

Ashuri: Kore wa, nan desu ka?

Ashley: "What is this?"

- アシュリー: いくらですか。

Ashuri: Ikura desu ka.

Ashley: "How much is it?"

Asking What Something is:

| Item Being Asked About | Topic Particle | What | Copula | Question Particle | Translation |
|------------------------|----------------|----------|------------|-------------------|----------------|
| [A] | は wa | 何 nan | です desu | か ka | "What is [A]?" |

If the topic is already understood, we can shorten this question to: 何ですか？ (Nan desu ka?)

Asking How Much Something Costs:

| Item Being Asked About | Topic Particle | How Much | Copula | Question Particle | Translation |
|------------------------|----------------|--------------|------------|-------------------|--------------------|
| [A] | は wa | いくら ikura | です desu | か ka | "How much is [A]?" |

If the topic is already understood, we can shorten this question to: いくらですか？ (Ikura desu ka?)

Useful Expressions for Buying Something

In the dialogue, Ashley bought lunch at a kiosk, specifying how much of each item she wanted. We'll go over some important expressions used for buying something, such as counters to specify the number of items you want.

Counters

Japanese has many different kinds of counters, words that we use to count objects according to size and shape. Here we'll introduce you to two counters commonly encountered in Japanese.

Counters for General Objects

| Japanese | Romaji | English |
|----------|--------|---------|
|----------|--------|---------|

| | | |
|-----|-----------|-----------------------|
| 一つ | hitotsu | "one (object)" |
| 二つ | futatsu | "two (objects)" |
| 三つ | mittsu | "three (objects)" |
| 四つ | yottsu | "four (objects)" |
| 五つ | itsutsu | "five (objects)" |
| 六つ | muttsu | "six (objects)" |
| 七つ | nanatsu | "seven (objects)" |
| 八つ | yattsu | "eight (objects)" |
| 九つ | kokonotsu | "nine (objects)" |
| 十 | t | "ten (objects)" |
| いくつ | ikutsu | "how many (objects)?" |

Counter for Small Objects

| Japanese | Romaji | English |
|----------|----------|-----------------------------|
| 一個 | i-kko | "one (small object)" |
| 二個 | ni-ko | "two (small objects)" |
| 三個 | san-ko | "three (small objects)" |
| 四個 | yon-ko | "four (small objects)" |
| 五個 | go-ko | "five (small objects)" |
| 六個 | ro-kko | "six (small objects)" |
| 七個 | nana-ko | "seven (small objects)" |
| 八個 | hachi-ko | "eight (small objects)" |
| 九個 | ky -ko | "nine (small objects)" |
| 十個 | j -kko | ten (small objects) |
| 何個 | nan-ko | "how many (small objects)?" |

Asking for Something

| Item Wanted | Object Particle | "give me" / "please" | Translation |
|---|-----------------|----------------------|--|
| [A] おむすび o-musubi クッキー kukk | を o | ください kudasai | "I'll take [A]" / "Please give me [A]" |

| | | | |
|------------|--|--|--|
| これ kore | | | |
|------------|--|--|--|

| Item | Object Particle | Amount | "give me" / "please" | Translation |
|------------------|-----------------|----------------|----------------------|--|
| おむすび o-musubi | を o | ひとつ hitotsu | ください kudasai | "I'll take [amount] [item]" / "Please give me [amount] [item]" |
| クッキー kukk | | ふたつ futatsu | | |
| これ kore | | みっつ mittsu | | |

Examples from the Dialogue

1. アシュリー: このサンドイッチ一つと、このクッキーを二つください。
Ashur : Kono sandoicchi hitotsu to, kono kukki o futatsu kudasai.
Ashley: "I'd like one of these sandwiches and two cookies, please."
2. アシュリー: じゃ、それを二個、ください。
Ashur : Ja, sore o ni-ko, kudasai.
Ashley: "Okay, I'll take two of those."

Vocabulary Usage: Welcome!/May I Help You?

いらっしゃいませ。[Irasshaimase.] "Welcome!/May I help you?" - This is an honorific phrase used by shop clerks and restaurant staff to greet customers. It usually simply means "welcome!", but when the clerk comes up to you to see how they can help you it is the equivalent of "(How) may I help you?" in English.

Review of Question Words

In this lesson, we introduced a couple of counter words used to count different items. For more detailed information on counters, please check the following Appendix lesson: Counter (Appendix #7).

Cultural Insight

Regional Foods in Japan

In the lesson, we introduced tenmusu as a regional food that originated from the Chūkyū area (Nagoya and the surrounding areas). There are many varieties of famous regional foods throughout Japan. Okonomiyaki (a flat pancake with meat and vegetables inside) from Osaka and Hiroshima, unagi ("eel") from Hamamatsu, and gyoza ("dumplings") from Utsunomiya are just a few examples of regional cuisine. If you get the chance to travel throughout Japan, try some of the local cuisine that is famous in the area. If you are not sure about what some kind of food is, you can use the phrase that we saw in this lesson, Kore wa nan desu ka? ("What is this?")



Gengo Japanese S1

Enjoy a Smooth Check-in at Your Hotel in Japan

10

| | |
|---------------------|---|
| Formal Kanji | 2 |
| Formal Kana | 2 |
| Formal Romanization | 3 |
| English | 3 |
| Vocabulary | 4 |
| Grammar Points | 5 |
| Cultural Insight | 8 |

Formal Kanji

| | |
|-------|---|
| 受付 | いらっしゃいませ。ご予約のお名前は。 |
| アシユリー | アシユリーです。 |
| 受付 | アシユリー・ジョーンズ様ですね。 |
| アシユリー | はい、そうです。 |
| 受付 | 一名様、禁煙のお部屋、 今日から8月31日までですね。 |
| アシユリー | はい、そうです。 |
| 受付 | じゃ、ご署名をお願いします。 ジョーンズ様のお部屋は807(はちぜろなな)号室でございます。 |
| | こちら、お部屋のカードキーでございます。 |
| | それから、こちら、朝食券でございます。 |
| アシユリー | ちょう・・・しょくけん。ちょうしょくけんは何ですか。 |
| 受付 | 朝食は朝ごはんです。ブレックファーストです。 券は、チケットです。 朝食券はブレックファーストのチケットです。 |
| アシユリー | あー。はい。朝ごはんは何時からですか。 |
| 受付 | 朝食は六時半から九時まででございます。 |

Formal Kana

| | |
|-------|---|
| うけつけ | いらっしゃいませ。ごよやくのおなまえは。 |
| アシユリー | アシユリーです。 |
| うけつけ | アシユリー・ジョーンズさまですね。 |
| アシユリー | はい、そうです。 |
| うけつけ | いちめいさま、きんえんのおへや、 きょうからはちがつさんじゅういちにちまでですね。 |
| アシユリー | はい、そうです。 |
| うけつけ | じゃ、ごしょめいをおねがいします。 ジョーンズさまのおへやは807(はちぜろなな)ごうしつでございます。 |
| | こちら、おへやのカードキーでございます。 |
| | それから、こちら、ちょうしょくけんでございます。 |
| アシユリー | ちょう・・・しょくけん。ちょうしょくけんはなんですか。 |
| うけつけ | ちょうしょくはあさごはんです。ブレックファーストです。 けんは、チケットです。 |

アシュリー
うけつけ

ちょうしょくけんはブレックファーストのチケットです。
あー。はい。あさごはんはなんじからですか。
ちょうしょくはろくじはんからくじまででございます。

Formal Romanization

| | |
|----------|---|
| Uketsuke | Irasshaimase. Go-yoyaku no o-namae wa. |
| Ashur | Ashur desu. |
| Uketsuke | Ashur . J nzu-sama desu ne. |
| Ashur | Hai, s desu. |
| Uketsuke | Ichimeisama, Kin'en no o-heya, ky kara hachigatsu san-j -ichi-nichi made desu ne. |
| Ashur | Hai, s desu. |
| Uketsuke | Ja, go-shomei o onegai shimasu. J nzu-sama no o-heya wa 807(hachi zero nana)-g -shitsu de gozaimasu. Kochira, o-heya no k do k de gozaimasu. Sore kara, kochira, ch shoku ken de gozaimasu. |
| Ashur | Ch ... shokuken. Ch shoku ken wa nan desu ka. |
| Uketsuke | Ch shoku wa asa go-han desu. Burekkuf suto desu. Ken wa, chiketto desu. Ch shoku ken wa burekkuf suto no chiketto desu. |
| Ashur | . Hai. Asa go-han wa nan-ji kara desu ka. |
| Uketsuke | Ch shoku wa roku-ji-han kara ku-ji made de gozaimasu. |

English

| | |
|--------------|--|
| Receptionist | Welcome! What name is your reservation under? |
| Ashley | Ashley. |
| Receptionist | Ms. Ashley Jones, is that right? |
| Ashley | Yes, that's right. |
| Receptionist | A non-smoking room for one, from today until August 31, is that correct? |
| Ashley | Yes, that's right. |
| Receptionist | Your signature please. Your room number is 807. Here is the key card to your room. |

Ashley And here are your "choshokuken."
 Receptionist "Ch ...shokuken. " What is a " ch shokuken? "
 "Ch shoku" is breakfast. It's "breakfast."
 "Ken" is a ticket.
 "Ch shoken" are breakfast tickets.
 Ashley Ohh, okay. What time is breakfast?
 Receptionist Breakfast is from six thirty to nine.

Vocabulary

| Kanji | Kana | Romaji | English |
|-------|--------|-------------|---------------------------|
| 予約 | よやく | yoyaku | reservation |
| 様 | さま | sama | Mr., Mrs. |
| 禁煙 | きんえん | kin'en | no smoking |
| 部屋 | へや | heya | room |
| ~号室 | ~ごうしつ | g -shitsu | room number ~ |
| カードキー | カードキー | k do k | key card |
| 朝ごはん | あさごはん | asa go-han | breakfast |
| 何時 | なんじ | nan-ji | what time |
| 六時半 | ろくじはん | roku-ji han | six thirty, half past six |
| 朝食 | ちょうしょく | ch shoku | breakfast |
| 券 | けん | ken | ticket |

Vocabulary Sample Sentences

予約はありますか。
 皆様、おはようございます。
 ここは禁煙です。
 部屋はどこですか。
 私の部屋は501号室です。
 カードキーをください。
 朝ごはんは何時までですか。
 今何時ですか。
 今、六時半です。
 朝食は、何時ですか。
 クーポン券、あります。

Do you have a reservation?
 Good morning, ladies and gentlemen.
 This place is no smoking.
 Where is the room?
 My room is Room 501.
 Please give me a key card.
 What time does breakfast end?
 What time is it now?
 It's half past six now.
 What time is breakfast?
 I have a coupon.

Grammar Points

Gengo Japanese Lesson #10 - Enjoy a Smooth Check-in at Your Hotel in Japan

こちらは、お部屋のカードキーでございます。

Kochira wa, o-heya no k do k de gozaimasu.

"Here is the key card to your room."

In this lesson, you will:

Learn how to use the sentence-ending particle ne (ね) to elicit agreement or confirm something

Learn how to use kara (から) and made (まで) to create "from [A] to [B]" sentences

Learn about the honorific prefixes o- (お) and go- (ご)

Learn some more ko-so-a-do words

Sentence-ending Particle ne (ね)

Ne (ね) is a sentence-ending particle that indicates that the speaker wants the listener to agree with or confirm what they have said. When used to elicit agreement, it is very similar to English tag questions such as "isn't it?" or "aren't you?"

Let's look at these examples from the conversation:

1. 受付: アシュリー・ジョーンズ様ですね。

Uketsuke: Ashur J nzu-sama desu ne.

Receptionist: "Ashley Jones, is that right?"

2. 受付: 一名様、禁煙のお部屋、今日から8月31日までですね。

Uketsuke: Ichi-mei-sama, kin'en no o-heya, ky kara hachi-gatsu san-j -ichi-nichi made desu ne.

Receptionist: "A non-smoking room for one, from today until August 31, is that correct?"

In both examples, the receptionist is confirming the information that she has on file for Ashley by using the particle ne (ね).

Compare these examples:

| | Example without ne | Example with ne |
|----------|---------------------------|---------------------------|
| Japanese | アシュリーさんの出身はニューヨークです。 | アシュリーさんの出身はニューヨークですね。 |
| Romaji | Ashur -san no shusshin wa | Ashur -san no shusshin wa |
| | | |

| | | |
|-----------|----------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| | Ny Y ku desu. | Ny Y ku desu ne. |
| "English" | "Ashley is from New York." | "Ashley is from New York, right?" |

| | | |
|-----------|--------------------|------------------------------|
| | Example without ne | Example with ne |
| Japanese | 今日は寒いです。 | 今日は寒いんですね。 |
| Romaji | Ky wa samui desu. | Ky wa samui desu ne. |
| "English" | "It's cold today." | "It's cold today, isn't it?" |

From [A] to [B]

In Lesson #8, we learned the word made (まで), which means "until." In this lesson, we'll learn the word kara (から), which means "from," which we can combine with made (まで) to create a "from [A] until [B]" sentence. Please note that the word order is different from English:

For Example:

1. 2:00 kara (から) = "from 2:00"
2. 6:00 made (まで) = "until 6:00"

| | |
|-----------------------|------------------------|
| [A] から [B] まで | From [A] until [B] |
| [A] kara [B] made | |

We can use this construction to talk about places ("from Tokyo to Osaka"), time ("from 8:00 to 12:00"), and dates, as seen in this example from the dialogue:

1. 今日から8月31日まで
Ky kara hachi-gatsu san-j -ichi-nichi made
"From today until August 31."

Other Examples:

1. 空港からホテルまで
K k kara hoteru made
"From the airport to the hotel."
2. 2時から6時まで
Ni-ji kara roku-ji made
"From 2:00 to 6:00."

Honorific Prefixes o- (お) and go- (ご)

O- (お) and go- (ご) are prefixes we attach to the beginning of some words to show respect or politeness. It is said that o- (お) precedes words of Japanese origin or words we commonly use in daily life, whereas go- (ご) precedes words of Chinese origin, but this rule has many exceptions.

Examples:

| | |
|------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| yoyaku ("reservation") | 予約 (yoyaku) becomes ご予約 (go-yoyaku) |
| heya ("room") | 部屋 (heya) becomes お部屋 (o-heya) |
| shomei ("signature") | 署名 (shomei) becomes ご署名 (go-shomei) |

1. 受付: いらっしゃいませ。ご予約のお名前は。
Uketsuke: Irasshaimase. Go-yoyaku no o-namae wa?
Receptionist: "Welcome! What name is your reservation under?"

Ko-so-a-do Words Revisited

In Lessons #3 and #8, we looked at Ko-so-a-do words, which are demonstrative words that show what you are talking about. This time we will take a look at Ko-so-a-do words used to politely refer to things, people, and directions. We also use these words to refer to directions.

| Japanese | Romaji | English |
|----------|---------|--|
| こちら | kochira | "this, this person, this way" |
| そちら | sochira | "that, that person, that way" |
| あちら | achira | "that, that person, that way (over there)" |
| どちら | dochira | "which?" / "which person" / "(who)?" / "which way?" |

1. 受付: こちら(は)、お部屋のカードキーでございます。
Uketsuke: Kochira (wa), o-heya no k do k de gozaimasu.
Receptionist: "Here is the key card to your room."

In the above sentence, the receptionist is using ultra-polite speech. Here's how the words changed to become ultra-polite:

1. これ (kore) こちら (kochira)
2. 部屋 (heya) お部屋 (o-heya)
3. です (desu) でございます (de gozaimasu)

To say the same thing in regular polite speech, we would say:

1. これは、部屋のカードキーです。
Kore wa, heya no k do k desu.

In the Appendix

In this lesson, we introduced some more Ko-so-a-do words, which we looked at in Lessons #3 and #8. For more detailed information on Ko-so-a-do words, please check the following Appendix lesson: Ko-so-a-do Words (Appendix #9).

Cultural Insight

Rice = Meal?

The word go-han (ごはん) literally means "cooked rice," but has come to mean "meal" in general in Japanese. This is because rice is considered the main staple food in Japan and is eaten with almost every meal. The word go-han is combined with the different times of day to create the names of daily meals:

| Time of Day | Meal | Japanese | "English" |
|-------------|---------------|---------------------|-------------|
| 朝 asa | ごはん go-han | 朝ごはん asa go-han | "breakfast" |
| 昼 hiru | ごはん go-han | 昼ごはん hiru go-han | "lunch" |

| | | | |
|----------|---------------|--------------------|----------|
| 晩 ban | ごはん go-han | 晩ごはん ban go-han | "dinner" |
|----------|---------------|--------------------|----------|





Gengo Japanese S1

Everything You Need to Know about Climate and Weather in Japan

11

| | |
|---------------------|---|
| Formal Kanji | 2 |
| Formal Kana | 2 |
| Formal Romanization | 3 |
| English | 3 |
| Vocabulary | 4 |
| Grammar Points | 5 |
| Cultural Insight | 8 |

Formal Kanji

| | |
|---------------------|--|
| Alarm clock sound | ピピピ ロクジデス ピピピ ロクジデス |
| アシュリー | (yawns) (turns on TV) |
| テレビ | 今日の天気です。 東京 雨 時々 くもり。 横浜、雨 のち 晴れ、千葉... |
| アシュリー | あめ ときどき くもり... |
| - - - Elevator hall | |
| スタッフ 1 | おはようございます。何階ですか。 |
| アシュリー | 一階、お願いします。 |
| スタッフ 1 | かしこまりました。 |
| - - - Lobby | |
| スタッフ 2 | おはようございます。 |
| アシュリー | すみません。タクシー乗り場はどこですか。 |
| スタッフ 2 | こちらです。どうぞ。 |
| アシュリー | ありがとうございます。 |
| スタッフ 2 | 傘はありますか。 |
| アシュリー | 傘？ |
| | いいえ。ありません。 |
| スタッフ 2 | では、これ、どうぞ。 いってらっしゃいませ。 |

Formal Kana

| | |
|---------------------|---|
| Alarm clock sound | ピピピ ロクジデス ピピピ ロクジデス |
| アシュリー | (yawns) (turns on TV) |
| テレビ | きょうのてんきです。 とうきょう あめ ときどき くもり。 よこはま、あめ のち はれ、ちば... |
| アシュリー | あめ ときどき くもり... |
| - - - Elevator hall | |
| スタッフ 1 | おはようございます。なんかいいですか。 |
| アシュリー | いっかい、おねがいします。 |
| スタッフ 1 | かしこまりました。 |
| - - - Lobby | |

| | |
|--------|----------------------|
| スタッフ 2 | おはようございます。 |
| アシュリー | すみません。タクシーのりばはどこですか。 |
| スタッフ 2 | こちらです。どうぞ。 |
| アシュリー | ありがとうございます。 |
| スタッフ 2 | かさはありますか。 |
| アシュリー | かさ？ |
| | いいえ。ありません。 |
| スタッフ 2 | では、これ、どうぞ。 |
| | いってらっしゃいませ。 |

Formal Romanization

| | |
|---------------------|---|
| Alarm clock sound | Pipipi roku-ji desu pipipi roku-ji desu |
| ashur | (yawns)(turns on TV) |
| terebi | Ky no tenki desu. |
| | T ky ame tokidoki kumori. |
| | Yokohama, ame nochi hare, Chiba... |
| Ashur | Ame tokidoki kumori... |
| - - - Elevator hall | |
| Sutaffu 1 | Ohay gozaimasu. Nan-kai desu ka. |
| Ashur | I-kkai, onegai shimasu. |
| Sutaffu 1 | Kashikomarimashita. |
| - - - Lobby | |
| Sutaffu 2 | Ohay gozaimasu. |
| ashur | Sumimasen. Takush noriba wa doko desu ka. |
| Sutaffu 2 | Kochira desu. D zo. |
| ashur | Arigat gozaimasu. |
| Sutaffu 2 | Kasa wa arimasu ka. |
| ashur | Kasa? |
| | lie. Arimasen. |
| Sutaffu 2 | Dewa, kore, d zo. |
| | Itterasshai mase. |

English

| | |
|-------------|--|
| Alarm clock | (beep-beep-beep) It's six o'clock! (beep-beep-beep) It's six |
|-------------|--|

sound o'clock!
 Ashley (yawns and turns on TV)
 TV And now for today's weather.
 In Tokyo, showers and occasionally cloudy.
 In Yokohama, showers in the morning and then it will clear up. In Chiba...

Ashley Showers and...occasionally cloudy...

- - - Elevator hall

Hotel staff Good morning. Which floor?

Ashley First floor, please.

Hotel staff Certainly.

- - - Lobby

Hotel staff #2 Good morning.

Ashley Excuse me, where can I catch a taxi?

Hotel staff #2 Right over here.

Ashley Thank you.

Hotel staff #2 Do you have an umbrella?

Ashley Umbrella?

No, I don't.

Hotel staff #2 Okay, here you are.

Have a nice day.

Vocabulary

| Kanji | Kana | Romaji | English |
|---------|---------|---------------|---------------------------|
| 雨 | あめ | ame | rain |
| 時々 | ときどき | tokidoki | sometimes |
| くもり | くもり | kumori | cloudy |
| 横浜 | よこはま | Yokohama | Yokohama |
| 千葉 | ちば | Chiba | Chiba |
| 何階 | なんかい | nan-kai | which floor |
| タクシー乗り場 | タクシーのりば | takush noriba | taxi stand, taxi terminal |
| 傘 | かさ | kasa | umbrella |
| のち | のち | nochi | after |
| 一階 | いっかい | i-kkai | first floor |
| では | では | dewa | well, well then, okay |

Vocabulary Sample Sentences

今日は雨です。
明日は、晴れ時々くもりです。

今日は、くもりです。
横浜ホテルまで、お願いします。
私の出身は千葉です。
あなたの部屋は何階ですか。
すみません。タクシー乗り場は...。
あの傘をください。
今日の天気は、晴れのち雨です。
一階はロビーです。
では、また。

Today is rainy.
Tomorrow it will be sunny, and occasionally cloudy.
It's cloudy today.
To Yokohama Hotel, please. (To a taxi driver)
I'm from Chiba.
Which floor is your room?
Excuse me. Where's the taxi stand?
Please give me that umbrella.
Today will be sunny and then will rain.
The lobby is on the first floor.
Well then, see you again.

Grammar Points

Gengo Japanese Lesson #11 - Everything You Need to Know about Climate and Weather in Japan

東京 雨 時々 くもり。

T ky ame tokidoki kumori.

"In Tokyo, showers and occasionally cloudy."

In this lesson, you will:

- Learn how to ask where something is using doko (どこ)
- Learn useful weather-related vocabulary
- Learn some useful set phrases

Asking Location

Being able to ask the location of something is very important! In the dialogue, Ashley asked where she could catch a taxi. Let's look at this sentence:

| Place/Item Being Asked About | Topic Particle | Where | Copula | Question Particle |
|------------------------------|----------------|------------|------------|-------------------|
| タクシー乗り場 Takush noriba | は wa | どこ doko | です desu | か。 ka |

Here is the construction:

[Place] wa doko desu ka?

More Examples:

1. トイレはどこですか。
Toire wa doko desu ka.
"Where is the bathroom?"
2. 駅はどこですか。
Eki wa doko desu ka.
"Where is the station?"

豊田さんの出身はどこですか。 from dialogue in Lesson 3

Toyota-san no shusshin wa doko desu ka.

"Where is Toyota-san from?" (literally, "Where is Toyota-san's hometown?")

[Weather-Related Vocabulary](#)

In the dialogue, we heard some examples of weather-related vocabulary from the weather report on TV. Let's take a look at some commonly used vocabulary related to the weather.

| | |
|------------------|------------------------------|
| 晴れ hare | "sunny" |
| くもり kumori | "cloudy" |
| 雨 ame | "rain" |
| 雷 kaminari | "thunderstorms," "lightning" |
| ときどき tokidoki | "sometimes," "on-and-off" |
| のち nochi | "after" |

Examples:

1. 雨のち晴
Ame nochi hare

- "Rain, then sunny later"
 - 晴ときどきくもり
 Hare tokidoki kumori
 "Sunny, occasionally cloudy"

Set Expressions

In the dialogue, we heard a couple of useful set phrases. Let's take a closer look at them as well as some other related expressions:

| Phrase | More Polite Phrase | Meaning |
|--------------------------|------------------------------------|--|
| わかりました Wakarimashita | かしこまりました Kashikomarimashita | These phrases mean "okay," with the meaning of "I understand" or "I see." Kashikomarimashita is a formal version used mostly by people who are addressing their customers. |
| いってらっしゃい Itte rasshai | いってらっしゃいませ Itte rasshaimase | These phrases literally mean, "go and come back." We say them to someone who is leaving a certain place but is expected to return in the future. |
| いってきます Itte kimasu | いってまいります Itte mairimasu | We say these phrases in response to itte rasshai. They roughly mean the same thing as "I'll be back" in English. |
| ただいま Tadaima | ただいまかえりました Tadaima kaerimashita | These phrases literally mean "I have just returned now" and we say them when we have just returned home/somewhere. |
| おかえりなさい Okaeri nasai | おかえりなさいませ Okaeri nasaimase | We say these phrases in response to tadaima. They mean "welcome back" or "welcome home." |

Note that we reserve the more polite phrases for very formal situations. The phrases on the left are polite enough for most situations.

Vocabulary Usage

In this dialog, we saw the phrase ohay gozaimasu (おはようございます), which means "good morning". Let's look at some other phrases used as greetings throughout the day.

| | | |
|-----------|----------------|---|
| おはようございます | ohay gozaimasu | "Good morning." |
| こんにちは | kon'nichi wa | "Hello." (can be used at any time during the day) |
| こんばんは | konbanwa | "Good evening." |

In the Appendix

In this lesson, we saw a counter used to count floors of a building, kai (階). For more detailed information on this and other counters, please check the following Appendix lesson: Counters (Appendix #7).

Cultural Insight

Umbrellas All Year Round

Rain falls throughout the year in Japan, with June and early July considered the main rainy season. During this time, you will see many people with umbrellas, known as kasa (傘) in Japanese, even if the rain is only sprinkling outside. Umbrellas come in all shapes and sizes, and you can purchase a cheap vinyl umbrella for as low as 100 yen, which is perfect for when you are stranded in the rain without an umbrella. Parasols meant for protection from the sun are called higasa (日傘) and are used by some in the sunny spring and summer weather.





Gengo Japanese S1

Get Insider Information from the Locals

12

| | |
|---------------------|---|
| Formal Kanji | 2 |
| Formal Kana | 2 |
| Formal Romanization | 3 |
| English | 4 |
| Vocabulary | 4 |
| Grammar Points | 5 |
| Cultural Insight | 8 |

Formal Kanji

| | |
|------------------|-------------------------|
| 運転手 | どちらまで。 |
| アシュリー | ネッサン自動車まで。 |
| 運転手 | え？どこまでですか？ |
| アシュリー | 日本橋のネッサン自動車まで。 |
| 運転手 | うーん。住所、わかりますか。 |
| アシュリー | はい、わかります。これです。 |
| 運転手 | ああ、はい。わかりました。 |
| (Starts driving) | |
| 運転手 | お客さん、日本語、わかりますか。 |
| アシュリー | はい、ちょっと。 |
| 運転手 | 日本語、上手ですね。 |
| アシュリー | 運転手さんも、上手ですね。 |
| 運転手 | 日本橋に、いいてんぷら屋がありますよ。 |
| アシュリー | 本当ですか。名前、わかりますか。 |
| 運転手 | あー、ちょっと・・・わかりません。すみません。 |
| (Taxi stops) | |
| 運転手 | 3320円です。 |
| アシュリー | はい。それから、領収書ください。 |
| 運転手 | はい、お釣りと領収書。 |
| | それから、はい、これ、地図です。 |
| | これ、駅。これ、てんぷら屋。 |
| | わかります？オッケイ？ |
| アシュリー | はい。オッケイです。 |
| | ありがとうございました。 |

Formal Kana

| | |
|------------------|---------------------|
| うんてんしゅ | どちらまで。 |
| アシュリー | ネッサンじどうしゃまで。 |
| うんてんしゅ | え？どこまでですか？ |
| アシュリー | にほんばしのネッサンじどうしゃまで。 |
| うんてんしゅ | うーん。じゅうしょ、わかりますか。 |
| アシュリー | はい、わかります。これです。 |
| うんてんしゅ | ああ、はい。わかりました。 |
| (Starts driving) | |
| うんてんしゅ | おきゃくさん、にほんご、わかりますか。 |

| | |
|--------------|-------------------------|
| アシュリー | はい、ちょっと。 |
| うんてんしゅ | にほんご、じょうずですね。 |
| アシュリー | うんてんしゅさんも、じょうずですね。 |
| うんてんしゅ | にほんばしに、いいてんぷらやがありますよ。 |
| アシュリー | ほんとうですか。なまえ、わかりますか。 |
| うんてんしゅ | あー、ちょっと・・・わかりません。すみません。 |
| (Taxi stops) | |
| うんてんしゅ | さんぜんさんびやくにじゅうえんです。 |
| アシュリー | はい。それから、りょうしゅうしょください。 |
| うんてんしゅ | はい、おつとりょうしゅうしょ。 |
| | それから、はい、これ、ちずです。 |
| | これ、えき。これ、てんぷらや。 |
| | わかります？オッケイ？ |
| アシュリー | はい。オッケイです。 |
| | ありがとうございました。 |

Formal Romanization

| | |
|------------------|---|
| Untenshu | Dochira made. |
| Ashur | Nessan jid sha made. |
| Untenshu | E? Doko made desu ka? |
| Ashur | Nihonbashi no Nessan jid sha made. |
| Untenshu | n. J sho, wakarimasu ka. |
| Ashur | Hai, wakarimasu. Kore desu. |
| Untenshu | , hai. Wakarimashita. |
| (Starts driving) | |
| Untenshu | O-kyaku-san, Nihon-go, wakarimasu ka. |
| Ashur | Hai, chotto. |
| Untenshu | Nihongo, j zu desu ne. |
| Ashur | Untenshu-san mo, j zu desu ne. |
| Untenshu | Nihonbashi ni, ii tenpura-ya ga arimasu yo. |
| Ashur | Hont desu ka. Namae, wakarimasu ka. |
| Untenshu | , chotto... wakarimasen. Sumimasen. |
| (Taxi stops) | |
| Untenshu | San-zen san-byaku ni-j -en desu. |
| Ashur | Hai. Sorekara, ry sh sho kudasai. |
| Untenshu | Hai, o-tsuru to ry sh sho. |
| | Sore kara, hai, kore, chizu desu. |
| | Kore, eki. Kore, tenpura-ysa. |

Ashur Wakarimasu? Okkei?
 Hai. Okkei desu.
 Arigat gozaimashita.

English

Taxi Driver Where to?
 Ashley Nesson Automotive.
 Taxi Driver Eh? Where?
 Ashley Nesson Automotive in Nihonbashi.
 Taxi Driver Hmm...do you know the address?
 Ashley Yes, I do. Here it is.
 Taxi Driver Ahh, okay. I got it.
 (Starts driving)
 Taxi Driver Do you understand Japanese, ma'am?
 Ashley Yes, a little.
 Taxi Driver Your Japanese is good!
 Ashley Your Japanese is good, too.
 Taxi Driver You know, there's a good tempura restaurant in Nihonbashi.
 Ashley Really? Do you know the name?
 Taxi Driver Ah, actually...I don't. Sorry.
 (Taxi stops)
 Taxi Driver That'll be 3320 yen.
 Ashley Okay. And I'd like the receipt please.
 Taxi Driver Okay, here's your change and your receipt.
 And... Here's a map.
 This is the station. This is the tempura restaurant.
 Do you understand? Okay?
 Ashley Yes! Okay.
 Thank you very much.

Vocabulary

| Kanji | Kana | Romaji | English |
|-------|--------|-------------|-----------------------------------|
| 住所 | じゅうしょ | j sho | address |
| わかります | わかります | wakarimasu | to understand, to know:-masu form |
| お客さん | おきゃくさん | o-kyaku-san | customer, guest |

| | | | |
|------|----------|-----------|---|
| 日本語 | にほんご | Nihon-go | Japanese |
| ちょっと | ちょっと | chotto | a bit |
| 上手 | じょうず | j zu | skilled, good at |
| いい | いい | ii | good, nice, pleasant, fine; i-adj. |
| 本当 | ほんとう | hont | really, truly, truth, reality |
| 領収書 | りょうしゅうしょ | ry sh sho | receipt |
| 地図 | ちず | chizu | map |
| 駅 | えき | eki | station |
| どちら | どちら | dochira | where (honorific version of doko) |
| 屋 | や | ya | a suffix which means store or seller |

Vocabulary Sample Sentences

住所はどこですか。
 あなたの気持ちがわかります。
 お客さん、日本は初めてですか。
 日本語、わかりません。
 ちょっと、すみません。
 ジョンの日本語は上手ですか。
 いい天気ですね。
 本当？
 領収書、おねがいします。
 地図をください。
 次の駅は大阪です。
 出身はどちらですか。
 いいラーメン屋はありますか。

What's the address?
 I know how you feel.
 Is this your first time in Japan, sir/ma'am?
 I don't understand Japanese.
 Excuse me for a minute.
 Is John's Japanese good?
 The weather is nice, isn't it?
 Really?
 Receipt, please
 Please give me the map.
 The next station is Osaka.
 Where are you from?(very polite)
 Are there any good ramen places?

Grammar Points

Gengo Japanese Lesson #12 - Get Insider Information from the Locals

お客さん、日本語、わかりますか。

O-kyaku-san, Nihon-go, wakarimasu ka.

"Do you understand Japanese, ma'am?"

In this lesson, you will:

Learn how to describe the location of something using the word arimasu (あります)

Learn how to talk about understanding using the verb wakarimasu (わかります)

Describing Location Using Arimasu (あります)

[place] ni [thing] ga arimasu

We can use the construction above to talk about the specific location of something. First we start with the location, followed by location particle ni (に), then the item, followed by subject particle ga (が), and end it all with arimasu (あります). For more information on arimasu (あります), please see Lesson 6.

| Place | ni | Thing | ga | "there is" | Translation |
|-------------------|---------|--------------------------|---------|-----------------|--|
| 日本橋 Nihonbashi | に ni | いいてんぷら屋 ii tempura-ya | が ga | あります arimasu | "There's a good tempura restaurant in Nihonbashi." |
| 一階 I-kkai | に ni | トイレ toire | が ga | あります arimasu | "There's a restroom on the first floor." |
| エジプト Ejiputo | に ni | ピラミッド piramiddo | が ga | あります arimasu | "There are pyramids in Egypt." |

Talking About Understanding Using Wakarimasu (わかります)

Wakarimasu (わかります) means "to understand" and is one of the most useful verbs you'll learn in Japanese.

| | |
|----------------------------------|---|
| わかります wakarimasu | "I understand" (present affirmative)* |
| わかりません wakarimasen | "I don't understand" (present negative) |
| わかりました wakarimashita | "I understand" (past affirmative)** |
| わかりませんでした wakarimasen deshita | "I didn't understand" (past negative) |

| | |
|---------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 分かりますか？ wakarimasu ka? | "Do you understand?" (question) |
|---------------------------|---------------------------------|

**When you want to say that you understand something that someone has just explained to you (as in "I see" or "I get it now"), it is better to use the past tense, wakarimashita (分かりました). Please see the note below.

To say that you understand something, you can say:

[something] ga wakarimasu

The thing that the subject understands is usually marked by the particle ga (が). Note, however, that we can also omit this particle with no change in meaning, as seen in the dialogue.

Examples:

1. (私は) 日本語が分かります。
(Watashi wa) Nihon-go ga wakarimasu.
"I understand Japanese."
2. (私は) 英語が分かります。
(Watashi wa) eigo ga wakarimasu.
"I understand English."

If you want to emphasize that you only understand something a little, you can use the word chotto (ちょっと):

1. (私は) 日本語がちょっと分かります。
(Watashi wa) Nihon-go ga chotto wakarimasu.
"I understand a little Japanese."

To ask if someone understands something, you can ask:

[something] ga wakarimasu ka?

For Example:

英語が分かりますか。
Eigo ga wakarimasu ka.

"Do you understand English?"

What's the difference between *wakarimasu* (present tense) and *wakarimashita* (past tense)?

Wakarimasu (わかります): Use this to mean "I know" or to convey the meaning of "I can understand the meaning or value of something."

Wakarimashita (わかりました): Use this to mean "Now I understand something that I didn't know about before."

The particle *mo* (も)

The particle *mo* (も) means "also" and "in addition to" and we can use it in place of the topic particle *wa* (は) and subject particle *ga* (が). We saw this particle used in this exchange between Ashley and the taxi driver:

1. 運転手: 日本語、上手ですね。
[Untenshu: Nihon-go, j zu desu ne.]
Taxi Driver: "Your Japanese is good!"
2. アシュリー: 運転手さん **も**、上手ですね。
[Ashur: Untenshu-san **mo**, j zu desu ne.]
Ashley: "Your Japanese is good, **too**."

In this exchange, Ashley uses the particle *mo* (も) to mean that the taxi driver is good at Japanese too. You can put *mo* after the pronoun for "I" to mean "me too."

For Example:

私も! / ぼくも!
Watashi mo! / Boku mo!
"Me too!"

Cultural Insight

Shop and Occupation Names

The word -ya (屋) means "shop" or "restaurant," but this word is not used on its own; instead, it is a suffix that is tacked on to the name of the item that the store specializes in. For example, ramen-ya (ラーメン屋) is a "ramen shop," sushi-ya (すし屋) is a "sushi restaurant," hon-ya (本屋) is a "bookstore," and so on.

When referring to someone by their occupation in Japanese (the waiter, the taxi driver, etc.), it is common to add the polite suffix -san (さん) to the person's occupation. A "taxi driver," for example, could be referred to as untenshu-san (運転手さん), a "waiter" could be referred to as ueit -san (ウェイターさん), etc.



Gengo Japanese S1

Learn the Proper Way to Do Business in Japan

13

| | |
|---------------------|---|
| Formal Kanji | 2 |
| Formal Kana | 2 |
| Formal Romanization | 3 |
| English | 3 |
| Vocabulary | 4 |
| Grammar Points | 5 |
| Cultural Insight | 7 |

Formal Kanji

| | |
|---------------|------------------------------------|
| 受付 | おはようございます。 |
| アシユリー | おはようございます。 9時に松田部長と約束があります。 |
| 受付 | お客様のお名前は。 |
| アシユリー | ニューヨーク支社のアシユリーと申します。 |
| 受付 | 申し訳ございません。もう一度お名前おねがいします。 |
| アシユリー | アシユリーです。 |
| 受付 | アシユリー・ジョーンズ様ですね。こちらです。どうぞ。 |
| (knock knock) | |
| 部長 | はい。 |
| 受付 | 失礼します。アシユリー・ジョーンズ様です。 |
| 松田部長 | おー、アシユリーさん、久しぶり。 |
| アシユリー | お久しぶりです。松田部長。 お元気ですか。 |
| 松田部長 | 元気ですよ。アシユリーさんは？ |
| アシユリー | はい、おかげさまで、元気です。 あ、これ、どうぞ。お土産です。 |
| 松田部長 | あー、すみませんね。ありがとう。 で、日本はどうですか。 |

Formal Kana

| | |
|---------------|-------------------------------------|
| うけつけ | おはようございます。 |
| アシユリー | おはようございます。 9時にまつだぶちょうとやくそくがあります。 |
| うけつけ | おきゃくさまのおなまえは。 |
| アシユリー | ニューヨークししゃのアシユリーともうします。 |
| うけつけ | もうしわけございません。もういちどおなまえおねがいします。 |
| アシユリー | アシユリーです。 |
| うけつけ | アシユリー・ジョーンズさまですね。こちらです。どうぞ。 |
| (knock knock) | |
| ぶちょう | はい。 |
| うけつけ | しつれいします。アシユリー・ジョーンズさまです。 |
| まつだぶちょう | おー、アシユリーさん、ひさしぶり。 |
| アシユリー | おひさしぶりです。まつだぶちょう。 おげんきですか。 |

まつだぶちょう げんきですよ。アシュリーさんは？
 アシュリー はい、おかげさまで、げんきです。
 あ、これ、どうぞ。おみやげです。
 まつだぶちょう あー、すみませんね。ありがとう。
 で、にほんはどうですか。

Formal Romanization

Uketsuke Ohay gozaimasu.
 Ashur Ohay gozaimasu.
 9-ji ni Matsuda buch to yakusoku ga arimasu.
 Uketsuke O-kyaku-sama no o-namae wa.
 Ashur Ny Y ku shisha no Ashur to m shimasu.
 Uketsuke M shiwake gozaimasen. M ichi-do o-namae onegaishimasu.
 Ashur Ashur desu.
 Uketsuke Ashur . J nzu-sama desu ne. Kochira desu. D zo.
 (knock knock)
 Buch Hai.
 Uketsuke Shitsurei shimasu. Ashur J nzu-sama desu.
 Matsuda buch , Ashur -san, hisashiburi.
 Ashur O-hisashiburi desu. Matsuda buch .
 O-genki desu ka.
 Matsuda buch Genki desu yo. Ashur -san wa?
 Ashur Hai, o-kage-sama de, genki desu.
 A, kore, d zo. O-miyage desu.
 Matsuda buch , sumimasen ne. Arigat .
 De, Nihon wa d desu ka.

English

Receptionist Good morning.
 Ashley Good morning.
 I have an appointment with Mr. Matsuda at nine.
 Receptionist May I have your name?
 Ashley I'm Ashley from the New York office.
 Receptionist I'm sorry; can I have your name again?
 Ashley Ashley.

Receptionist (knock knock) Ms. Ashley Jones, yes? This way, please.
 Mr. Matsuda Yes?
 Receptionist I'm sorry to interrupt. Ashley is here.
 Mr. Matsuda Oh, Ashley! Long time no see!
 Ashley Long time no see, Mr. Matsuda.
 How are you?
 Mr. Matsuda I'm great! And you?
 Ashley I'm great, thank you.
 Oh, and this is for you. It's a gift.
 Mr. Matsuda Ohh, thank you!
 So, how's Japan?

Vocabulary

| Kanji | Kana | Romaji | English |
|--------|---------|-----------------|--|
| 受付 | うけつけ | uketsuke | reception |
| 約束 | やくそく | yakusoku | promise |
| 申します | もうします | m shimasu | (humble form) to be called, to say; -masu form |
| 久しぶり | ひさしぶり | hisashiburi | Long time no see. |
| 部長 | ぶちょう | buch | department head |
| 元気 | げんき | genki | good, fine |
| お土産 | おみやげ | o-miyage | gift, souvenir |
| 支社 | ししゃ | shisha | branch office |
| おかげ様で。 | おかげさまで。 | O-kage-sama de. | Thanks to you. Thanks for asking. |

Vocabulary Sample Sentences

受付はどこですか。
 約束は何時ですか。
 水木一男と申します。
 太郎さん、久しぶりですね。
 田中さんはいい部長です。
 元気ですか。
 これは、お土産です。どうぞ。

Where is the reception?
 What time is the appointment?
 My name is Kazuo Mizuki.
 Taro, it's been a long time.
 Mr./Ms. Tanaka is a good manager.
 How are you?
 Here's something for you.

ロンドン支社のジョンソンです。

I'm Johnson from the London office.

A 「お元気ですか。」 B 「おかげ様で。」

A: How are you? B: Fine, thanks for asking.

Grammar Points

Gengo Japanese #13 - Learn the Proper Way to Do Business in Japan

で、日本はどうですか。

De, Nihon wa d desu ka.

"So, how's Japan?"

In this lesson, you will:

Learn useful phrases for a work environment

Learn expressions that can be used when you see someone for the first time in a long time

Ask how something is by using d desu ka (どうですか)

Useful Phrases for a Work Environment

In the Japanese work environment, we have many set phrases that we use through the day.

| Set Phrases | Translation | Explanation |
|---|--|--|
| [Name]と約束があります。 [Name] to yakusoku ga arimasu. | "I have an appointment with [Name]" | Used to indicate you have an appointment with someone. |
| [Name]と申します。 [Name] to m shimasu. | "My name is [Name]" | A very formal way to introduce yourself. |
| 申し訳ございません。 M shiwake gozaimasen. | "I'm very sorry." | A very formal way to apologize. |
| 失礼します。 Shitsurei shimasu. | "Please excuse me," "I'm sorry to interrupt." | Said when entering or leaving a room. |

Examples:

1. アシュリー: 9時に松田部長と約束があります。

Ashur : Ku-ji ni Matsuda-buch to yakusoku ga arimasu.

Ashley: "I have an appointment with Mr. Matsuda at nine."

2. アシュリー: ニューヨーク支社のアシュリーと申します。

Ashur : Ny Y ku shisha no Ashur to m shimasu.

Ashley: "I'm Ashley from the New York office."

- 受付: 申し訳ございません。もう一度お名前おねがいします。

Uketsuke: M shiwake gozaimasen. M ichi-do o-namae onegai shimasu.

Receptionist: "I'm sorry; can I have your name again?"

- 受付: 失礼します。アシュリー・ジョーンズ様です。

Uketsuke: Shitsurei shimasu. Ashur J nzu-sama desu.

Receptionist: "I'm sorry to interrupt. Ashley is here."

It's Been a Long Time!

We use the phrase hisashiburi (久しぶり) to greet someone that we have not seen for a long time.

Examples:

久しぶり Hisashiburi - "Long time no see"

We say this to friends or people of equal status to us.

お久しぶりです O-hisashiburi desu - "Long time no see"

This is a more formal version of the phrase above that we use towards superiors, etc.

お元気ですか O-genki desu ka - "How are you?"

A polite way to ask how someone is. Unlike the English "how are you?" we don't say this to the people we see every day. We generally reserve it for when we have not seen someone for a while and want to know how they are doing.

おかげさまで O-kage-sama de - "Thanks for asking" "Thanks to you"

This phrase is the equivalent of "thanks for asking" in English, and we often use it in response to o-genki desu ka? ("How are you?")

Asking How Something Is

In the dialogue, Mr. Matsuda asked Ashley about Japan using Nihon wa dō desu ka? (日本はどうですか。) You can use the question word dō (どう) to ask how something is ("How is ？").

[something] + wa d desu ka?

Examples:

| Thing | wa (は) | how | copula | question ka (か) | Translation |
|---------------|---------|---------|------------|-----------------|--------------------|
| 東京 Tokyo | は wa | どう d | です desu | か ka | "How's Tokyo?" |
| ホテル Hoteru | は wa | どう d | です desu | か ka | "How's the hotel?" |
| 学校 Gakko | は wa | どう d | です desu | か ka | "How's school?" |
| 仕事 Shigoto | は wa | どう d | です desu | か ka | "How's work?" |

Example:

1. 松田部長:で、日本はどうですか。

Matsuda-buch : De, Nihon wa d desu ka.*

Mr. Matsuda: "So, how's Japan?"

* In this sentence, de (で) is short for それで (sore de), which means "so" or "and then."



Cultural Insight

Japanese Gift-Giving Culture - O-miyage

Giving gifts, or o-miyage, is a big part of Japanese culture. We often translate o-miyage as "souvenir," but the concept of o-miyage is a little different from that conjured up by the English word "souvenir." While we usually use "souvenir" to talk about something bought for oneself or close friends and family members on a trip as a memento, in Japanese we use o-miyage to talk about gifts that are brought back by someone who has traveled somewhere. It also indicates gifts that are brought by someone who is visiting from somewhere else. These gifts usually consist of something edible that is a specialty of the area. O-miyage are not only given to friends and family, but even to people you work with at the office.



Gengo Japanese S1

Making the Most of Your Time in Japan

14

| | |
|---------------------|---|
| Formal Kanji | 2 |
| Formal Kana | 2 |
| Formal Romanization | 3 |
| English | 3 |
| Vocabulary | 4 |
| Grammar Points | 5 |
| Cultural Insight | 8 |

Formal Kanji

| | |
|-----------------------|--|
| 松田部長 (knock-knock) | 光岡君をお願いします。 |
| 光岡れい | 失礼します。 |
| 松田部長 | アシュリーさん、こちらは秘書の光岡君です。 光岡君、こちらは、ニューヨーク支社のアシュリー・ジョーンズさん。 |
| 光岡れい | はじめまして。 秘書の光岡れいと申します。 |
| アシュリー | アシュリーと申します。 どうぞよろしくお願いいたします。 |
| 松田部長 | 光岡君、じゃ、アシュリーさんの今日のスケジュールは。 |
| 光岡れい | こちらです。どうぞ。 |
| アシュリー | ...十時から会議。 十二時に銀座きゅうべいに行く。ランチミーティング。 一時半に、イノベイティブ・ランゲージ・ラーニングに行く。プレゼンテーション。 四時半に横浜工場に行く。見学。 七時に横浜駅に行く。歓迎会。 うわー。すごい、スケジュールですね。 |
| 松田部長 | 日本へようこそ。 |

Formal Kana

| | |
|--------------------------|---|
| まつだぶちょう (knock-knock) | みつおかくんをおねがいします。 |
| みつおかれい | しつれいします。 |
| まつだぶちょう | アシュリーさん、こちらはひしょのみつおかくんです。 みつおかくん、こちらは、ニューヨークししゃのアシュリー・ジョーンズさん。 |
| みつおかれい | はじめまして。 ひしょのみつおかれいともうします。 |
| アシュリー | アシュリーともうします。 どうぞよろしくお願いいたします。 |
| まつだぶちょう | みつおかくん、じゃ、アシュリーさんのきょうのスケジュールは。 |
| みつおかれい | こちらです。どうぞ。 |

アシュリー ...じゅうじからかいぎ。
 じゅうにじにぎんざきゅうべいに行く。ランチミーティング。
 いちじはんに、イノベティブ・ランゲージ・ラーニングに行く。
 。プレゼンテーション。
 よじはんによこはまこうじょうに行く。けんがく。
 しちじによこはまえきに行く。かんげいかい。
 うわー。すごい、スケジュールですね。
 まつだぶちょう にほんへようこそ。

Formal Romanization

Matsuda buch Mitsuoka-kun o onegai shimasu.
 (knock-knock)
 Mitsuoka Rei Shitsurei shimasu.
 Matsuda buch Ashur -san, kochira wa hisho no Mitsuoka-kun desu.
 Mitsuoka Rei Mitsuoka-kun, kochira wa, Ny Y ku shisha no Ashur J nzu-san.
 Hajimemashite.
 Ashur Hisho no Mitsuoka Rei to m shimasu.
 Ashur Ashur to m shimasu.
 D zo yoroshiku onegai shimasu.
 Matsuda buch Mitsuoka-kun, ja, Ashur -san no ky no sukej ru wa.
 Mitsuoka Rei Kochira desu. D zo.
 Ashur ...J -ji kara kaigi.
 J ni-ji ni Ginza Ky bei ni iku. Ranchi m tingu.
 Ichi-ji han ni, Inobeitibu-rang ji-r ningu ni iku. Purezent shon.
 Yo-ji han ni Yokohama k j ni iku. Kengaku.
 Shichi-ji ni Yokohama-eki ni iku. Kangeikai.
 Uw . Sugoi, sukej ru desu ne.
 Matsuda buch Nihon e y koso.

English

Mr. Matsuda (intercom) Send Mitsuoka-kun in, please.
 (knock knock)
 Rei Mitsuoka I'm coming in...
 Mr. Matsuda Ashley, this is Ms. Rei Mitsuoka, our secretary.
 Mitsuoka-kun, this is Ashley from the New York office.

Rei Mitsuoka Nice to meet you.
I'm Rei Mitsuoka, the secretary.

Ashley I'm Ashley.
Nice to meet you.

Mr. Matsuda Mitsuoka-kun, do you have Ashley's schedule for the day?

Rei Mitsuoka Here it is.

Ashley Meeting at ten.
Go to Ginza Kyubei at twelve. Lunch meeting.
Go to Innovative Language Learning at one-thirty. Presentation.
Go to the Yokohama factory at four-thirty. Take a tour.
Go to Yokohama Station at seven. Welcome party.
Wow, what a schedule!

Mr. Matsuda Welcome to Japan.

Vocabulary

| Kanji | Kana | Romaji | English |
|-----------|-----------|----------------|------------------------|
| 秘書 | ひしょ | hisho | secretary |
| はじめまして。 | はじめまして。 | Hajimemashite. | Nice to meet you. |
| 会議 | かいぎ | kaigi | meeting, conference |
| 銀座 | ぎんざ | Ginza | Ginza |
| 行く | いく | iku | to go |
| 見学 | けんがく | kengaku | inspection, field trip |
| 歓迎会 | かんげいかい | kangeikai | welcome party |
| スケジュール | スケジュール | sukej ru | schedule |
| ランチミーティング | ランチミーティング | ranchi m tingu | lunch meeting |
| プレゼンテーション | プレゼンテーション | purezent shon | presentation |
| 工場 | こうじょう | k j | factory |
| ようこそ | ようこそ | Y koso | Welcome! |

Vocabulary Sample Sentences

光岡さんは、松田部長の秘書です。

Ms. Mitsuoka is the secretary of Mr. Matsuda, the manager.

こんにちは。はじめまして。
朝7時から、会議があります。
銀座にいいすし屋があります。
明日空港に行きます。

Hello. Nice to meet you.
I have a meeting at 7 in the morning.
There's a good sushi bar in Ginza.
I'm going to the airport tomorrow.

工場見学に行く。
金曜日、田中さんの歓迎会があります。

I'll go on a factory tour.
We'll have a welcome party for Mr. Tanaka on Friday.

明日のスケジュールがわかりません。
12時から、ランチミーティングがあります。
田中さんは、プレゼンテーションが上手です。

I don't know my schedule for tomorrow.
We are going to have a lunch meeting at 12.
Mr./Ms. Tanaka is good at giving presentations.

明日の朝、工場に行きます。
ようこそ。にほんへ。

I'm going to the factory tomorrow morning.
Welcome to Japan!

Grammar Points

Gengo Japanese #14 - Making the Most of Your Time in Japan

こちらは、ニューヨーク支社のアシュリー・ジョーンズさん。

Kochira wa, Ny Y ku shisha no Ashur Jonzu-san.

"This is Ashley from the New York office."

In this lesson, you will:

Learn useful expressions for introducing and meeting people

Learn the verb *iku* (行く) which means "to go"

Learn the difference between the dictionary form and the masu form of a verb

Useful Expressions for Introducing and Meeting People

In this dialog, Mr. Matsuda introduced Ashley to Rei Mitsuoka. Let's look at the phrase he used to do this:

こちらは、ニューヨーク支社のアシュリー・ジョーンズさん。

Kochira wa, Ny Y ku shisha no Ashur Jonzu-san.

"This is Ashley from the New York office."

Let's look at the construction:

Kochira wa [Name] -san desu.

We can use the word *kochira* (こちら) to refer to someone that we are introducing to someone else.

Another example:

こちらは豊田一郎さんです。
Kochira wa Toyota Ichir -san desu.
"This is Mr. Ichiro Toyota."

The Verb Iku (行く)

In the dialog, Ashley was given a schedule for her business trip, which involved going to many places. The verb that means "go" is iku (行く).

[Place] ni iku

Let's take a look at this example:

私は東京に行く。
Watashi wa T ky ni iku.
"I go to Tokyo" or "I will go to Tokyo."

Because the Japanese language doesn't have a separate future tense, the above sentence could mean either "I go to Tokyo," or "I will go to Tokyo." If you want to avoid confusion and distinguish between the present and the future, you can specify when the action takes place:

明日、私は東京に行きます。
Ashita, watashi wa T ky ni ikimasu.
"Tomorrow, I'm going to Tokyo".

More examples:

| Place | ni | iku | Translation |
|---------------------|---------|-----------|------------------------------------|
| 空港 K k | に ni | 行く iku | I go/I'm going to the airport |
| 横浜駅 Yokohama eki | に ni | 行く iku | I go/I'm going to Yokohama Station |
| 日本 Nihon | に ni | 行く iku | I go/I'm going to Japan |

*Note that we can use the particle e (へ) instead of ni (に).

When you want to specify when you are going somewhere, add the time followed by the particle ni (に). Note that relative time expressions such as ky (今日, "today") and ashita (明日, "tomorrow") do not need the particle ni (に).

[Time] ni [Place] ni iku

| Time | ni | Place | ni | iku | Translation |
|------------------|---------|---------------------|---------|-----------|---------------------------------------|
| 7 時 Shichi-ji | に ni | 空港 k k | に ni | 行く iku | I'm going to the airport at 7:00 |
| 3 時 San-ji | に ni | 横浜駅 Yokohama eki | に ni | 行く iku | I'm going to Yokohama Station at 3:00 |
| 月曜日 Getsuy bi | に ni | 東京 T ky | に ni | 行く iku | I'm going to Tokyo on Monday |

Iku (行く) is the dictionary form of the verb "to go," which we use in informal situations. In formal situations, we use ikimasu (行きます), which is known as the masu form because it ends in -masu. Please see below for more information on these two forms.

7 The Particle ni (に)

In the explanations above, we covered two different uses of the particle ni (に).

First, the particle ni (に) indicates movement toward a place.

For Example:

私は東京に行きます

Watashi wa T ky ni ikimasu.

"I go to Tokyo" or "I'm going to Tokyo"

We also use ni (に) with the verbs kimasu (来ます "to come"), and kaerimasu (かえります, "to return").

For Example:

1. 私は東京に来ます。
Watashi wa T ky ni kimasu.
"I come to Tokyo" or "I'm coming to Tokyo"
2. 私は東京にかえります。
Watashi wa T ky ni kaerimasu.
"I return to Tokyo" or "I'm returning to Tokyo"

Dictionary Forms of Verbs

Masu Form vs. Dictionary form

The verbs we have introduced so far have been in the masu form: shimasu (します), arimasu (あります), wakarimasu (わかります). All verbs in the masu form have a corresponding form called the dictionary form. To look up the verbs in a dictionary, you need to know this dictionary form of the verb. In the dialogue, we saw the dictionary form of the verb iku (行く). For more information on how to make the dictionary form from the masu form of a verb, please see the Conjugation Lessons.

| Dictionary Form | Masu Form |
|-----------------|----------------|
| iku (行く) | ikimasu (行きます) |

In many cases, we use the dictionary form when speaking informal Japanese, and the masu form when speaking formal Japanese.

In the Appendix

In this lesson, we saw some more phrases that are related to time. For more detailed information on telling time, please check the following Appendix lesson: Time: Hours/Minutes (Appendix #2).

Cultural Insight

Usage of the Name Suffix -kun (くん)

Earlier, we introduced the word -kun as a polite suffix that is attached to the names of boys and men. However, there are some men who use -kun after the names of their female subordinates. When used in this way, -kun is attached to the family name. We saw an example of this in the dialog when Mr. Matsuda referred to Ms. Mitsuoka, his secretary, as

Mitsuoka-kun.

こちらは秘書の光岡君です。

Kochira wa hisho no Mitsuoka-kun desu.

"This is Ms. Mitsuoka, the secretary."

In-group vs. Out-group

In Japanese society, a big distinction is made between in-group and out-group members. In-group members include those in your family, people who work in the same company as you, and so on, while out-group members refer to everyone else who is not in your in-group. Ashley, Ms. Mitsuoka, and Mr. Matsuda all work for the same company, which means that they belong to the same in-group. Because of this, Mr. Matsuda referred to Ms. Mitsuoka with the polite suffix -kun, as well as with the polite word for "this," kochira. If he were introducing Ms. Mitsuoka to someone from the out-group (i.e., outside the company), he wouldn't attach -kun to her name, and would probably address her using kore rather than kochira:

(when addressing the out-group)

これは秘書の光岡です。

Kore wa hisho no Mitsuoka desu.

"This is Mitsuoka, the secretary."



Gengo Japanese S1

Stand Out from the Crowd with these Language Learning Tricks and Tips

15

| | |
|---------------------|---|
| Formal Kanji | 2 |
| Formal Kana | 2 |
| Formal Romanization | 3 |
| English | 4 |
| Vocabulary | 4 |
| Grammar Points | 5 |
| Cultural Insight | 8 |

Formal Kanji

松田部長 皆さん、お疲れさまです。
 こちらは、ニューヨーク支社のアシュリー・ジョーンズさん。
 じゃ、アシュリーさん自己紹介と乾杯をお願いしますね。

アシュリー え？日本語で？
 松田部長 ええ。もちろん日本語で。
 アシュリー 皆さん、こんばんは。はじめまして。
 私の名前はアシュリー・ジョーンズです。アメリカ人です。
 出身はニューヨークのロングアイランドです。
 日本語は...ちょっとわかります。
 でも、まだ上手じゃありません。

鈴木 上手だよ！
 アシュリー でも、英語はとても上手です。
 鈴木 当然だよ！
 アシュリー 皆さん、よろしくお願いします。
 (applause)
 アシュリー じゃ、乾杯！
 全員 乾杯！

本田大介 アシュリーさん！久しぶり！元気？
 アシュリー 元気じゃない。
 うそうそ。
 本田君は元気？

本田大介 元気元気。
 あ、アシュリーさん、ビールがないですね。何、飲みます？

アシュリー お勧めは。

Formal Kana

まつだぶちょう みなさん、おつかれさまです。
 こちらは、ニューヨークししゃのアシュリー・ジョーンズさん。
 じゃ、アシュリーさんじこしょうかいとかんぱいをおねがいしま
 すね。

アシュリー え？にほんごで？
 まつだぶちょう ええ。もちろんにほんごで。
 アシュリー みなさん、こんばんは。はじめまして。
 わたしのなまえはアシュリー・ジョーンズです。アメリカじんで

| | |
|------------|------------------------------|
| | す。 |
| | しゅっしんはニューヨークのロングアイランドです。 |
| | にほんごは...ちょっとわかります。 |
| | でも、まだじょうずじゃありません。 |
| すずき | じょうずだよ！ |
| アシュリー | でも、えいごはとてもじょうずです。 |
| すずき | とうぜんだよ！ |
| アシュリー | みなさん、よろしくおねがいします。 |
| (applause) | |
| アシュリー | じゃ、かんぱい！ |
| ぜんいん | かんぱい！ |
| ほんだだいすけ | アシュリーさん！ひさしぶり！げんき？ |
| アシュリー | げんきじゃない。 |
| | うそうそ。 |
| | ほんだくんはげんき？ |
| ほんだだいすけ | げんきげんき。 |
| | あ、アシュリーさん、ビールがないですね。なに、のみます？ |
| アシュリー | おすすめは。 |

Formal Romanization

| | |
|--------------|--|
| Matsuda buch | Mina-san, o-tsukare-sama desu. |
| | Kochira wa, Ny Y ku shisha no Ashur J nzu-san. |
| | Ja, Ashur -san jikosh kai to kanpai o onegai shimasu ne. |
| Ashur | E? Nihon-go de? |
| Matsuda buch | . Mochiron nihon-go de. |
| Ashur | Mina-san, konbanwa. Hajimemashite. |
| | Watashi no namae wa Ashur J nzu desu. Amerika-jin desu. |
| | Shusshin wa Ny Y ku no Ronguairando desu. |
| | Nihon-go wa... chotto wakarimasu. |
| | Demo, mada j zu ja arimasen. |
| Suzuki | J zu da yo! |
| Ashur | Demo, eigo wa totemo j zu desu. |
| Suzuki | T zen da yo! |
| Ashur | Mina-san, yoroshiku onegai shimasu. |
| (applause) | |
| Ashur | Ja, kanpai! |
| Zen'in | Kanpai! |

| | |
|---------------|---|
| Honda Daisuke | Ashur -san! Hisashiburi! Genki? |
| Ashur | Genki ja nai. Uso uso. Honda-kun wa genki? |
| Honda Daisuke | Genki genki. |
| Ashur | A, Ashur -san, b ru ga nai desu ne. Nani, nomimasu? O-susume wa. |

English

| | |
|---------------|--|
| Matsuda | Good work today, everyone! This is Ashley Jones from the New York office. Ashley, could you introduce yourself and make a toast? |
| Ashley | Huh? In Japanese?? |
| Matsuda | Yes, of course in Japanese! |
| Ashley | Good evening, everyone. Nice to meet you. My name is Ashley Jones. I'm American. I'm from Long Island in New York. I understand...a little Japanese. But I'm not good at it yet. |
| Suzuki | Yes you are!! |
| Ashley | But I'm very good at English. |
| Suzuki | Well, of course you are! |
| Ashley | I look forward to working with you all! |
| (applause) | |
| Ashley | Cheers! |
| Everyone | Cheers! |
| Daisuke Honda | Ashley-san! Long time no see! How are ya? |
| Ashley | Not good... Just kidding! How are you Honda-kun? |
| Daisuke Honda | I'm great! |
| Ashley | Oh, you don't have any beer do you. What will you have to drink? What do you recommend? |

Vocabulary

| Kanji | Kana | Romaji | English |
|--------|---------|-------------|---------------------|
| 皆さん | みなさん | mina-san | everyone |
| 自己紹介 | じこしょうかい | jiko sh kai | self-introduction |
| もちろん | もちろん | mochiron | Of course. |
| こんばんは。 | こんばんは。 | Konbanwa. | Good evening. |
| 乾杯 | かんぱい | Kanpai | Cheers! (exp.) |
| まだ | まだ | mada | yet |
| 俺 | おれ | ore | I (used by males) |
| とても | とても | totemo | very |
| 当然 | とうぜん | t zen | natural, of course |
| うそ | うそ | uso | lie, falsehood |
| ビール | ビール | b ru | beer |
| 飲みます | のみます | nomimasu | to drink; masu form |
| お勧め | おすすめ | o-susume | recommendation |

Vocabulary Sample Sentences

皆さん、こんにちは。
 自己紹介をおねがいます。
 もちろん、行きます。
 こんばんは。いらっしゃいませ。
 かんぱーい！
 私は、まだ、携帯がありません。
 俺は学生です。
 これはとてもおいしいです。
 当然、アシュリーは英語がわかります。
 うそです。
 生ビール、ひとつください。
 何を飲みますか。
 おすすめは何ですか。

Hello, everybody
 Please introduce yourself.
 Of course, I'm going.
 Good evening. May I help you?
 Cheers!
 I don't have a cell phone yet.
 I'm a student.(informal/rough)
 This is very tasty.
 Of course, Ashley understands English.
 It's a lie.
 One draft beer, please.
 What would you like to drink?
 What do you recommend?

Grammar Points

Gengo Japanese Lesson #15 - Stand out from the Crowd with these Language Learning Tricks and Tips

でも、英語はとても上手です。

Demo, eigo wa totemo j zu desu.

"But I'm very good at English."

In this lesson, you will:

Learn how to describe things using adjectives

Learn more about formal and informal speech

Describing Things Using Adjectives

Using adjectives to describe things can really make your Japanese more colorful.

There are 2 types of adjectives:

i-adjectives

na-adjectives

In this lesson, you'll learn basic sentence structure using nouns and adjectives.

Informal

| | | |
|-------------|---|--|
| Affirmative | [topic] wa [noun/na-adjective] (da) | [topic] is [noun/na-adjective] |
| Negative | [topic] wa [noun/na-adjective] ja nai | [topic] is not [noun/na-adjective] |

Da (だ) is the informal version of the copula desu (です), but we cannot use it after all adjectives. Please see the next lesson for more information on i-adjectives and na-adjectives.

Example:

1. アシュリーは学生だ。
Ashur wa gakusei da.
"Ashley is a student."
2. アシュリーは元気だ。
Ashur wa genki da.
"Ashley is fine."
3. アシュリーは学生じゃない。
Ashur wa gakusei ja nai.
"Ashley isn't a student."
4. アシュリーは元気じゃない。
Ashur wa genki ja nai.
"Ashley isn't fine."

Now, let's take a look at the formal versions of the phrases above:

Formal

| | | |
|-------------|--|--|
| Affirmative | [topic] wa [noun/na-adjective] desu | [topic] is [noun/na-adjective] |
| Negative | [topic] wa [noun/na-adjective] ja arimasen [topic] wa [noun/na-adjective] ja nai desu | [topic] is not [noun/na-adjective] |

Example:

1. アシュリーは学生です。
Ashur wa gakusei desu.
"Ashley is a student."
2. アシュリーは元気です。
Ashur wa genki desu.
"Ashley is fine."
3. アシュリーは学生じゃありません。
Ashur wa gakusei ja arimasen.
"Ashley isn't a student."
4. アシュリーは元気じゃありません。
Ashur wa genki ja arimasen.
"Ashley isn't fine."

Formal and Informal Speech (Verbs)

In the last lesson, we briefly introduced the concept of the dictionary form (informal) and the masu form (formal) of verbs, using iku/ikimasu ("to go") as an example. For information about conjugating between the masu form and the dictionary form of a verb See Conjugation Lesson 5.

In this lesson, you'll learn the conjugation rule for Class 1 verbs.

When the verb is in the masu form
Change the final -imasu to -u

When the verb is in the dictionary form
Change the final -u to -imasu

| Informal | Formal | English |
|-----------|-----------------|----------|
| aru (ある) | arimasu (あります) | to exist |
| nomu (飲む) | nomimasu (飲みます) | to drink |
| iku (行く) | ikimasu (行きます) | to go |

Cultural Insight

Being Modest in Japanese

In Japan, being modest is considered a virtue. When complimented, Japanese people usually deny or downplay the compliment, even when there is some truth to it. Ashley was being modest in her introduction speech when she said:

日本語はちょっと分かります。でも、まだ上手じゃありません。
Nihon-go wa chotto wakarimasu. Demo, mada j zu ja arimasen.
"I understand...a little Japanese. But I'm not good at it yet."

Even though Ashley understands more than just "a little" Japanese, she downplays her ability by saying she only understands a little and is not that good at it. Being modest and using these kinds of phrases will go a long way in Japan!

O-tsukare-sama desu (お疲れさまです)

In the dialogue, Mr. Matsuda started speaking to his group of subordinates with the phrase o-tsukare sama desu (お疲れさまです). This phrase literally means, "You must be tired," and is used to appreciate someone's hard work and effort. It is commonly used as a greeting in the workplace. When recognizing someone's hard work that has already been completed, the copula desu can also be changed to the past tense, deshita, to create the phrase O-tsukare-sama deshita (お疲れさまでした).



Gengo Japanese S1

Fit in and Make Friends - Several Surefire Phrases to Help Your Social Life

16

| | |
|---------------------|---|
| Formal Kanji | 2 |
| Formal Kana | 2 |
| Formal Romanization | 3 |
| English | 3 |
| Vocabulary | 4 |
| Grammar Points | 5 |
| Cultural Insight | 8 |

Formal Kanji

本田大介 難しい質問ですね。
うーん。何が好きですか。
甘いお酒が好きですか。
アシュリー 甘いカクテルは好きじゃないです。
本田大介 じゃ、日本酒は？
アシュリー 任せます。

本田大介 はい、どうぞ。
アシュリー うわー。きれいなカップ。
本田大介 ああ、それはおちょこ。
アシュリー おちょこ？変な名前。
鈴木すばる(drunk) ねえねえ、アシュリーちゃんは花火が好き？
)
アシュリー はなび・・・は何ですか。
鈴木すばる ヒュードドン！パッ
本田大介 英語でファイヤーワークだね。
鈴木すばる そうそう、ファイヤーワーク！ファイヤーワーク！
アシュリー ああ、好きです。大好きです。
鈴木すばる 本当？明日の夜、暇？

Formal Kana

ほんだだいすけ むずかしいしつもんですね。
うーん。なにがすきですか。
あまいおさががすきですか。
アシュリー あまいカクテルはすきじゃないです。
ほんだだいすけ じゃ、にほんしゅは？
アシュリー まかせます。

ほんだだいすけ はい、どうぞ。
アシュリー うわー。きれいなカップ。
ほんだだいすけ ああ、それはおちょこ。
アシュリー おちょこ？へんななまえ。
すずきすばる(drunk) ねえねえ、アシュリーちゃんのはなびがすき？
nk)
アシュリー はなび・・・はなんですか。

| | |
|---------|-------------------------|
| すずきすばる | ヒュードドン！パッ |
| ほんだだいすけ | えいごでファイヤーワークだね。 |
| すずきすばる | そうそう、ファイヤーワーク！ファイヤーワーク！ |
| アシュリー | ああ、すきです。だいすきです。 |
| すずきすばる | ほんとう？あしたのよる、ひま？ |

Formal Romanization

| | |
|---------------|---|
| Honda Daisuke | Muzukashii shitsumon desu ne. n. Nani ga suki desu ka. Amai o-sake ga suki desu ka. |
| Ashur | Amai kakuteru wa suki ja nai desu. |
| Honda Daisuke | Ja, Nihonshu wa? |
| Ashur | Makasemasu. |
| Honda Daisuke | Hai, d zo. |
| Ashur | Uw . kirei na kappu. |
| Honda Daisuke | , sore wa o-choko. |
| Ashur | O-choko?Hen na namae. |
| Suzuki | N n , Ashur -chan wa hanabi ga suki? |
| Subaru(drunk) | |
| Ashur | Hanabi... wa nan desu ka. |
| Suzuki Subaru | Hy dodon! Pa |
| Honda Daisuke | Eigo de faiy w ku da ne. |
| Suzuki Subaru | S s , faiy w ku! Faiy w ku! |
| Ashur | , suki desu. Daisuki desu. |
| Suzuki Subaru | Hont ? Ashita no yoru, hima? |

English

| | |
|---------------|---|
| Daisuke Honda | Well, that's a tough question. Hmm...what do you like? Do you like sweet alcohol? |
| Ashley | No, I don't like sweet alcohol. |
| Daisuke Honda | Okay, how about Japanese sake? |
| Ashley | I'll leave it up to you! |

Daisuke Honda Here you go!
 Ashley Wow, what a pretty cup!
 Daisuke Honda Oh, that's an "o-choko."
 Ashley "O-choko?" That's a weird name.
 Subaru Suzuki Hey, Ashley...do you like "hanabi?"
 Ashley What's..."hanabi?"
 Subaru Suzuki *Hyuuuuu...bang!*
 Daisuke Honda "Fireworks" in English.
 Subaru Suzuki Yeah, yeah, fireworks! Fireworks!
 Ashley Yes, I like them! I really like them.
 Subaru Suzuki Really? Are you free tomorrow night?

Vocabulary

| Kanji | Kana | Romaji | English |
|-------|-------|------------|--|
| 難しい | むずかしい | muzukashii | difficult |
| 質問 | しつもん | shitsumon | question |
| 何 | なに | nani | what |
| 好き | すき | suki | to like, likable; Adj(na) |
| 甘い | あまい | amai | sweet; Adj (i) |
| お酒 | おさけ | o-sake | sake, alcohol |
| 日本酒 | にほんしゅ | Nihonshu | Japanese rice wine |
| きれい | きれい | kirei | beautiful; Adj(na) |
| 変 | へん | hen | strange, odd, eccentric; Adj(na) |
| 花火 | はなび | hanabi | fireworks |
| 大好き | だいすき | daisuki | love, really like; Adj(na) |
| 暇 | ひま | hima | free ; Adj(na) |
| カクテル | カクテル | kakuteru | cocktail |
| 任せます | まかせます | makasemasu | to leave to someone, to entrust someone with something |
| カップ | カップ | kappu | cup |
| おちょこ | おちょこ | o-choko | sake cup |

Vocabulary Sample Sentences

日本語は難しいです。
 すみません。質問があります。
 何を飲みますか。
 私はオードリー・ヘップバーンが好きです。
 アメリカのクッキーは甘いです。
 私はお酒が好きです。
 日本酒がありますか。
 このイヤリングはきれいです。
 今日は、変な天気だ。
 今夜、花火大会があります。
 私はスポーツが大好きです。
 明日、暇ですか。
 カクテルは嫌いです。
 A:明日、どこ行く。 B:任せます。

きれいなコーヒークップですね。
 おちょこを2つください。

Japanese is difficult.
 Excuse me. I have a question.
 What would you like to drink?
 I like Audrey hepburn.
 American cookies are sweet.
 I like alcohol.
 Do you have Japanese rice wine?
 These earrings are beautiful.
 The weather is weird today.
 There is a fireworks show tonight.
 I love sports.
 Are you free tomorrow?
 I don't like cocktails.
 A: Where shall we go tomorrow? B:I'll leave it up to you.
 That's a beautiful coffee cup.
 Two sake cups, please.

Grammar Points

Gengo Japanese Lesson #16 - Fit in and Make Friends - Several surefire phrases to help your social life

甘いお酒が好きですか。

Amai o-sake ga suki desu ka.

"Do you like sweet alcohol?"

In this lesson, you will:

Learn about i-adjectives and na-adjectives

Learn how to talk about what you like using the word suk(好き)

Talk about degrees of liking someone or something

Prenominal Usage of I-Adjectives and Na-Adjectives

In Japanese, there are two kinds of adjectives: i-adjectives and na-adjectives. For more information on these two types, please check Conjugation Lessons 2 and 3. Let's look at how these two adjectives differ when they occur in front of a noun.

Adjectives that end in "i" are i-adjectives and they can come right before a noun.

[i-adjective] + [noun]

| | | |
|-------------|---------------|--------------|
| あまい amai | おさけ o-sake | sweet liquor |
| 若い wakai | 人 hito | young person |
| 暑い atsui | 日 hi | hot da |

Na-adjectives need an na (な) after them when they come before a noun.

[na-adjective] + na + [Noun]

| | | | |
|----------------|---------|---------------|------------------|
| へん hen | な na | なまえ namae | strange name |
| きれい kirei | な na | 花火 hanabi | pretty fireworks |
| たいへん taihen | な na | 仕事 shigoto | tough job |

Using Suki (好き)

To talk about what you like, you can use the adjective suki (好き). This adjective literally means, "liked" or "likeable" but has the same meaning as "I like" in English.

Affirmative

| | | |
|-----------|--|--------------------------------|
| Formal: | [subject] wa [object] ga suki desu | [subject] like(s) [object] |
| Informal: | [subject] wa [object] ga suki (da) | [subject] like(s) [object] |

Examples:

- 私はねこが好きです。
Watashi wa neko ga suki desu.
"I like cats."

豊田さんはお酒が好きです。

Toyota-san wa o-sake ga suki desu.

"Mr. Toyota likes alcohol."

Question

| | | |
|-----------|--|-----------------------------------|
| Formal: | [subject] wa [object] ga suki desu ka? | Does [subject] like [object]? |
| Informal: | [subject] wa [object] ga suki? | Does [subject] like [object]? |

Example:

(アシュリーさんは) 甘いお酒が好きですか。

(Ashur -san wa) amai o-sake ga suki desu ka?.

"Ashley, do you like sweet drinks?"

Degrees of Liking/Not Liking Something

Let's look at some different words that indicate different degrees of liking/not liking something.

In these examples, we assume that the subject is "I."

| | |
|--|--------------------------|
| [object] が だいすき (です) [object] ga daisuki (desu) | "I love [object]" |
| [object] が すき (です) [object] ga suki (desu) | "I like [object]" |
| [object] が すきじゃない (です) [object] ga suki janai (desu) | "I don't like [object]" |
| [object] が すきじゃありません [object] ga suki ja arimasen | |
| [object] が きらい (です) [object] ga kirai (desu) | "I hate [object]" |
| [object] が だいきらい (です) [object] ga daikirai (desu) | "I really hate [object]" |

Examples:

1. てんぷらが大好きです。

Tenpura ga daisuki desu.

"I love tempura."

- お酒が好きじゃないです。

O-sake ga suki ja nai desu.

"I don't like alcohol."

- うそがきらいです。

Uso ga kirai desu.

"I hate lies."

Vocab Usage

In the dialog, we saw the word amai (甘い), which means "sweet". Let's take a look at some more vocabulary used for describing taste.

| | | |
|-------|---------|--------|
| 甘い | amai | sweet |
| しょっぱい | shoppai | salty |
| すっぱい | suppai | sour |
| 辛い | karai | spicy |
| 苦い | nigai | bitter |

8

Cultural Insight

So What IS Sake?

Many English speakers are familiar with the word "sake," which we use in English to talk about Japanese rice wine. In Japanese, the word sake, or o-sake, as it is commonly known with the polite prefix o- added, refers to alcohol in general. Japanese rice wine that is known as "sake" in English is called Nihon-shu in Japanese. It's important to note that in Japan, alcohol is a big part of socializing, especially in the business world when going out with co-workers or clients. If you would rather not drink, don't hesitate to refuse by saying O-sake, dame desu (お酒、だめです) which literally means "Alcohol is no good," but comes across as "I don't drink alcohol."

Fireworks

Fireworks festivals, known as hanabi taikai (花火大会) in Japanese, are very popular events that are held in the summer throughout Japan. Major fireworks festivals draw crowds of thousands of people, and unless you go early and reserve a space, it can sometimes be hard

to find a place to sit and enjoy the fireworks! Many people go in big groups with friends, family, or co-workers, and it is common to eat and drink as you sit and watch the fireworks. The word for fireworks, hanabi (花火), is made up of the words for "flower" and "fire."



Gengo Japanese S1

Understanding Directions - Never Get Lost Again

17

| | |
|---------------------|----|
| Formal Kanji | 2 |
| Formal Kana | 2 |
| Formal Romanization | 3 |
| English | 4 |
| Vocabulary | 4 |
| Grammar Points | 5 |
| Cultural Insight | 11 |

Formal Kanji

本田大介 もしもし？アシュリーさん、今、どこにいますか。
 アシュリー ええっと……。わかりません。
 本田大介 近くに何がありますか。
 アシュリー 本屋と...銀行と...大きい公園があります。
 鈴木すばる あ、もしもし、鈴木です。
 公園の隣に花屋がある？
 アシュリー 花屋？ないですよ。
 鈴木すばる 近くにコンビニはある？
 アシュリー はい、あります。
 私は、今、セブンイレブンの前にいます。
 鈴木すばる セブンイレブンの前？
 セブンイレブンの左に花屋はない？
 アシュリー あー！ある！あります。
 鈴木すばる みんな、花屋の前にいるよ。
 アシュリー 花屋の前？ああー！（runs）
 すみません、みなさん。
 本田大介 大丈夫。問題ないですよ。
 アシュリー うわー。それは、着物ですか？
 光岡れい 着物じゃないです。これは、浴衣。
 アシュリー ゆかた？
 へえー。かわいいですね。
 本田大介 じゃ、行きましょう。
[click here to listen to the entire conversation.](#)

Formal Kana

ほんだだいすけ もしもし？アシュリーさん、いま、どこにいますか。
 アシュリー ええっと……。わかりません。
 ほんだだいすけ ちかくになにがありますか。
 アシュリー ほんやと...ぎんこうと...おおきいこうえんがあります。
 すずきすばる あ、もしもし、すずきです。
 こうえんのとなりにはなやがある？
 アシュリー はなや？ないですよ。
 すずきすばる ちかくにコンビニはある？
 アシュリー はい、あります。
 わたしは、いま、セブンイレブンのまえにいます。

すずきすばる セブンイレブンのまえ？
 アシュリー セブンイレブンのひだりにはなやはない？
 すずきすばる あー！ある！あります。
 アシュリー みんな、はなやのまえにいるよ。
 ほんだだいすけ はなやのまえ？ ああー！ (runs)
 アシュリー すみません、みなさん。
 ほんだだいすけ だいじょうぶ。もんだいがないですよ。
 アシュリー うわー。それは、きものですか？
 みつおかれい きものじゃないです。これは、ゆかた。
 アシュリー ゆかた？
 ほんだだいすけ へえー。かわいいですね。
 ほんだだいすけ じゃ、いきましょう。

Formal Romanization

Honda Daisuke Moshimoshi? Ashur -san, ima, doko ni imasu ka.
 Ashur tto....Wakarimasen.
 Honda Daisuke Chikaku ni nani ga arimasu ka.
 Ashur Hon-ya to... gink to... kii k en ga arimasu.
 Suzuki Subaru A, moshimoshi, Suzuki desu.
 Ashur K en no tonari ni hana-ya ga aru?
 Ashur Hana-ya? Nai desu yo.
 Suzuki Subaru Chikaku ni konbini wa aru?
 Ashur Hai, arimasu.
 Suzuki Subaru Watashi wa, ima, Sebun Irebun no mae ni imasu.
 Suzuki Subaru Sebun Irebun no mae?
 Ashur Sebun Irebun no hidari ni hana-ya wa nai?
 Ashur ! Aru! Arimasu.
 Suzuki Subaru Minna, hana-ya no mae ni iru yo.
 Ashur Hana-ya no mae? ! (runs)
 Ashur Sumimasen, mina-san.
 Honda Daisuke Daij bu. Mondai nai desu yo.
 Ashur Uw . Sore wa, kimono desu ka?
 Mitsuoka Rei Kimono ja nai desu. Kore wa, yukata.
 Ashur Yukata?
 Ashur H . Kawaii desu ne.
 Honda Daisuke Ja, ikimash .

English

Daisuke Honda Hello? Ashley, where are you now?
 Ashley Umm... I don't know!
 Daisuke Honda What's nearby?
 Ashley There's a bookstore...and a bank...and a big park.
 Subaru Suzuki Oh hi, it's Suzuki.
 Is there a flower shop next to the park?
 Ashley Flower shop? No, there isn't.
 Subaru Suzuki Is there a convenience store nearby?
 Ashley Yes, there is.
 Right now, I'm in front of Seven Eleven.
 Subaru Suzuki In front of Seven Eleven?
 Isn't there a flower shop to the left of it?
 Ashley ...Oh! Yes! There is.
 Subaru Suzuki We're all in front of the flower shop.
 Ashley In front of the flower shop? Oh!! (runs)
 I'm so sorry, everyone.
 Daisuke Honda It's okay, no problem!
 Ashley Wow, is that a kimono?
 Rei Mitsuoka It's not a kimono. This is a yukata.
 Ashley Yukata?
 Wow, it's cute!
 Daisuke Honda Well then, let's go!

Vocabulary

| Kanji | Kana | Romaji | English |
|-------|------|---------|---------------------------------------|
| います | います | imasu | to be (animate), to exist; -masu form |
| いる | いる | iru | to be, to exist |
| 近く | ちかく | chikaku | near |
| 本屋 | ほんや | hon-ya | bookstore |
| 銀行 | ぎんこう | gink | bank |
| 大きい | おおきい | kii | big |
| 公園 | こうえん | k en | park |
| 隣 | となり | tonari | next to, next door |
| コンビニ | コンビニ | konbini | convenience store |
| 前 | まえ | mae | before, in front |

| | | | |
|---------|---------|--------------|---------------------------------------|
| 左 | ひだり | hidari | left |
| みんな | みんな | min'na | everyone |
| 問題 | もんだい | mondai | problem |
| 着物 | きもの | kimono | kimono |
| 浴衣 | ゆかた | yukata | light cotton kimono |
| かわいい | かわいい | kawaii | cute, pretty |
| 花屋 | はなや | hana-ya | flower shop, florist |
| セブンイレブン | セブンイレブン | Sebun-Irebun | Seven Eleven(convenience store) |

Vocabulary Sample Sentences

彼氏がありますか。
 どこにいる？
 近くに駅がありますか。
 今、本屋にいます。
 日本橋に日本銀行があります。
 銀行の前に大きい本屋がある。
 私は、この公園が大好きです。
 銀行は、本屋の隣です。
 私はコンビニに行きます。
 銀行の前に大きい本屋がある。
 コンビニの左に、おいしいラーメン屋があり
 ます。
 私は、クラスみんなが大好きです。
 ちょっと問題があります。
 私は着物が好きです。
 浴衣がありますか。
 その浴衣はかわいい。
 花屋はどこですか。
 セブンイレブンのパンはおいしい。

Do you have a boyfriend?
 Where are you now?
 Is there a station nearby?
 I'm at the bookstore now.
 There's a Bank of Japan in Nihonbashi.
 There is a big bookstore in front of the bank.
 I love this park.
 The bank is next to a book store.
 I'll go to the convenience store.
 There is a big bookstore in front of the bank.
 There is a good ramen shop to the left of the
 convenience store.
 I love all of my classmates.
 I have a bit of a problem.
 I like kimonos.
 Do you have a yukata (light cotton kimono)?
 That yukata is pretty.
 Where's the florist?
 The bread sold at Seven Eleven is good.

Grammar Points

Gengo Japanese Lesson #17 - Understanding Directions - Never Get Lost Again
 はなやがあります。

Hana-ya ga arimasu.
 "There's a flower shop."

In this lesson, you will:

Learn the difference between arimasu (あります) and imasu (います) and when to use each

Learn how to talk about locations in more detail

Learn how to make a suggestion with -mash (-ましょう)

Using Arimasu (あります) and Imasu (います)

Arimasu (あります) and imasu (います) are both verbs that express "to be," "to exist," "to be located," or "to have." We use arimasu (あります), which we covered in Lesson 6, for inanimate things, whereas we use imasu (います) for animate things such as people and animals.

[Inanimate thing] ga arimasu (formal) = "There is ~," "There are ~," "I have ~"

[Inanimate thing] ga aru (informal) = "There is ~/" "There are ~/" "I have ~"

Affirmative:

There's a flower shop.

Formal: 花屋があります。 [Hana-ya ga arimasu.]

Informal: 花屋がある。 [Hana-ya ga aru.]

Negative:

There isn't a flower shop.

Formal: 花屋がありません。 [Hana-ya ga arimasen.]

Informal: 花屋がない。 [Hana-ya ga nai.]

Examples:

1. 花屋があります。
 Hana-ya ga arimasu.
 "There's a flower shop."
2. ちずがあります。
 Chizu ga arimasu.
 "I have a map."
3. 時間がある。
 Jikan ga aru.
 "I have time."

[Animate thing] ga imasu (formal) = "There is ~/"There are ~/"I have ~"

[Animate thing] ga iru (informal) = "There is ~/"There are~/"I have ~"

Affirmative:

There is a teacher (here).

Formal: 先生がいます。 [Sensei ga imasu.]

Informal: 先生がいる。 [Sensei ga iru.]

Negative:

There isn't a teacher (here).

Formal: 先生がいません。 [Sensei ga imasen.]

Informal: 先生がいない。 [Sensei ga inai.]

Examples:

1. 松田部長がいます。
Matsuda-buch ga imasu.
"Mr. Matsuda is here."
2. ボーイフレンドがいますか。
B ifurendo ga imasu ka.
"Do you have a boyfriend?"
3. ペットがいる。
Petto ga iru.
"I have a pet."

[Talking About Location in More Detail](#)

First, to talk about the location of something in relation to a landmark, we use the particle no (の). See Lesson 12 for how to describe location using arimasu (あります).

[Landmark] no [location]

| | |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 本屋の隣 (ほんやのとなり) Hon-ya no tonari | "Next to the bookstore" |
| 花屋の前 (はなやのまえ) Hana-ya no mae | "In front of the flower shop" |
| 駅の近く (えきのちかく) | "Near the station" |
| | |

Eki no chikaku

By using the location particle ni (に) after the location, we can talk about where an object is.

[Landmark] no [location] ni [object] ga arimasu/imasu.

| | | | |
|---------------------------------------|---------|-----------------------------------|---|
| 本屋の隣 (ほんやのとなり) Hon-ya no tonari | に ni | コンビニがあります。 konbini ga arimasu. | "There is a convenience store next to the bookstore." |
| 駅の近く (えきのちかく) Eki no chikaku | に ni | 銀行があります。 gink ga arimasu. | "There is a bank near the station." |
| 花屋の前 (はなやのまえ) Hana-ya no mae | に ni | ねこがいます。 neko ga imasu. | "There is a cat in front of the flower shop." |

Example from the dialogue:

鈴木すばる: 公園の隣に花屋がある?

Suzuki Subaru: K en no tonari ni hana-ya ga aru?

Subaru Suzuki: "Is there a flower shop next to the park?"

Making Suggestions with -mash (-ましょう)

At the end of the dialogue, Daisuke suggests that they go ("Let's go!") using ikimash (行きましょう). This -mash is known as the volitional form and we use it to politely suggest, propose, or invite.

To make the volitional, we start with a verb in the masu form (see Lesson 14), take away -masu, and attach -mash instead.

| Masu form of a verb | Take away -masu | Attach -mash |
|---------------------|-----------------|---------------------|
| ikimasu (いきます) | iki- | ikimash (いきましよう) |

More Examples:

| Masu Form of a Verb | Meaning | Volitional Form (-mash) | Meaning |
|---------------------|------------|--------------------------|---------------|
| tabemasu (たべます) | "to eat" | tabemash (たべましよう) | "Let's eat" |
| nomimasu | "to drink" | nomimash | "Let's drink" |
| | | | |

| | | | |
|---------------------|-----------|-----------------------|--------------|
| (のみます) | | (のみましょう) | |
| machimasu (まちます) | "to wait" | machimash (まちましょう) | "Let's wait" |

Example from the Dialogue:

本田大介:じゃ、行きましょう。

Honda Daisuke: Ja, ikimash .

Daisuke Honda: "Well then, let's go!"

Vocabulary Usage: Hello?

もしもし。[Moshi moshi.] "Hello?" - This phrase is largely used when answering the phone in Japanese and is equivalent to "Hello?". It can also be used to get someone's attention when you think that they can't hear you or are not paying attention.

Vocabulary Building: Place Name and Location Vocabulary

Place Name Vocabulary

| | |
|------------------------|-----------------|
| 銀行 (ぎんこう) gink | "bank" |
| 本屋 (ほんや) hon-ya | "bookstore" |
| 花屋 (はなや) hana-ya | "flower shop" |
| 駅 (えき) eki | "train station" |
| 公園 (こうえん) k en | "park" |
| 入り口 (いりぐち) iriguchi | "entrance" |
| 出口 (でぐち) deguchi | "exit" |
| 空港 (くうこう) k k | "airport" |
| タクシー乗り場 | "taxi stand" |
| | |

| | |
|--------------------------------|---------------------|
| (タクシーのりば) takush noriba | |
| バス乗り場 (バスのりば) basu noriba | "bus terminal" |
| コンビニ konbini | "convenience store" |
| 学校 (がっこう) gakk | "school" |
| 大学 (だいがく) daigaku | "university" |
| ビル biru | "building" |
| スーパー s p | "supermarket" |

Location Vocabulary

| | |
|-----------------------|---------------|
| 前 (まえ) mae | "in front of" |
| 後ろ (うしろ) ushiro | "behind" |
| 右 (みぎ) migi | "right" |
| 左 (ひだり) hidari | "left" |
| 隣 (となり) tonari | "next to" |
| 近く (ちかく) chikaku | "close to" |
| 上 (うえ) ue | "above" |
| 下 (した) shita | "below" |
| 中 (なか) naka | "inside" |

Cultural Insight

Yukata and Kimono

If you visit Japan in the summer, you might see some people wearing yukata (浴衣), a light cotton kimono often worn in the summer. Yukata are usually worn when visiting a matsuri (祭り), which is a summer festival. The kanji for the word yukata means, "bath" (浴) and "cloth" (衣) because yukata are worn as pajamas at ry kan, traditional Japanese-style inns. The style of a yukata is similar to that of a kimono, but a kimono can have multiple layers and the fabric is usually much thicker and heavier. While yukata are worn in casual situations in the summer, kimono are often reserved for special occasions, such as weddings or Coming of Age Day. (Reference All About Lesson 9 for more information on this holiday.)



Gengo Japanese S1

Pick Up Lines that Don't Work, and Ones that Do!

18

| | |
|---------------------|----|
| Formal Kanji | 2 |
| Formal Kana | 2 |
| Formal Romanization | 3 |
| English | 4 |
| Vocabulary | 4 |
| Grammar Points | 6 |
| Cultural Insight | 10 |

Formal Kanji

アシュリー 光岡さんはよく浴衣を着ますか。
 光岡れい いや、あまり、着ませんね。
 本田大介 本田君は？よく、浴衣着る？
 全然着ないね。
 あ・・・でも旅館で時々、着るね。
 おい、鈴木、その本、何？
 鈴木すばる これ？ジャジャーン！「ナンパテクニック101」
 はい、アシュリーちゃん。これ、プレゼント。
 アシュリー 本当ですか？ありがとうございます。
 (Turns pages)
 光岡れい うわー面白い！
 「こんにちは。お嬢さん、お茶をしませんか。」
 ふるーい！！成功しないよ。(Laughs)
 本田大介 「ねえ、お茶しない？」「ねえ、一人？」「今、暇？」
 これは、まあまあ。
 光岡れい 「ここ、よく来る？」・・・これは、自然。
 アシュリー たくさん、ありますね。
 皆さんは、よくナンパをしますか。
 光岡れい しませんよ。
 本田大介 僕もしない。
 鈴木すばる 俺は・・・よくする。
 光岡れい＆本田 大介 うそ！？
 鈴木すばる うそだよ。

Formal Kana

アシュリー みつおかさんはよくゆかたをきますか。
 みつおかれい いや、あまり、きませんね。
 ほんだだいすけ ほんだくんは？よく、ゆかたきる？
 ぜんぜんきないね。
 あ・・・でもりょかんでときどき、きるね。
 おい、すずき、そのほん、なに？
 すずきすばる これ？ジャジャーン！「ナンパテクニック101」
 はい、アシュリーちゃん。これ、プレゼント。
 アシュリー ほんとうですか？ありがとうございます。

(Turns pages)

みつおかれい

うわーおもしろい！

「こんにちは。おじょうさん、おちゃをしませんか。」

ふるーい！！せいこうしないよ。(Laughs)

ほんだだいすけ

「ねえ、おちゃしない？」「ねえ、ひとり？」「いま、ひま？」

これは、まあまあ。

みつおかれい

「ここ、よくくる？」・・・これは、しぜん。

アシュリー

たくさん、ありますね。

みなさんは、よくナンパをしますか。

みつおかれい

しませんよ。

ほんだだいすけ

ぼくもしない。

すずきすばる

おれは・・・よくする。

みつおかれい&

うそ！？

ほんだだいすけ

すずきすばる

うそだよ。

Formal Romanization

Ashur

Mitsuoka-san wa yoku yukata o kimasuka.

Mitsuoka Rei

Iya, amari, kimasen ne.

Honda-kun wa? Yoku, yukata kiru?

Honda Daisuke

Zenzen kinai ne.

A... demo ryokan de tokidoki, kiru ne.

Oi, Suzuki, sono hon, nani?

Suzuki Subaru

Kore? Jaj n! (Nanpa tekunikku 101)

hai, Ashur-chan. Kore, purezento.

Ashur

Hont desu ka? Arigat gozaimasu.

(Turns pages)

Mitsuoka Rei

Uw omoshiroi!

(Kon'nichiwa. O-j -san, o-cha o shimasen ka.)

Fur i!! Seik shinai yo.(Laughs)

Honda Daisuke

(Nee, o-cha shinai?)(Nee, hitori?)(Ima, hima?)

Kore wa, m m .

Mitsuoka Rei

(koko, yoku kuru?)... Kore wa, shizen.

Ashur

Takusan, arimasu ne.

mina-san wa, yoku nanpa o shimasu ka.

Mitsuoka Rei

Shimasen yo.

Honda Daisuke

Boku mo shinai.

Suzuki Subaru

Ore wa... yoku suru.

Mitsuoka Rei & Uso!?
 Honda Daisuke
 Suzuki Subaru Uso da yo.

English

Ashley Mitsuoka-san, do you often wear yukata?
 Rei Mitsuoka No, I don't usually wear them.
 How about you, Honda-kun? Do you often wear yukata?
 Daisuke Honda I never do.
 Oh...but I sometimes wear them at Japanese-style inns.
 Hey, Suzuki, what's that book you have?
 Subaru Suzuki This? Taa-daaa! "Techniques for Getting a Date 101."
 Here, Ashley-chan. A present for you.
 Ashley Really? Thank you!
 (Turns pages)
 Rei Mitsuoka Whoa, these are funny!
 "Hello. Would you like to go out for tea, young lady?"
 That's so old! You won't succeed with that one. (Laughs)
 Daisuke Honda "Want to get something to drink?" "Are you alone?" "Are you free
 now?"
 These are okay.
 Rei Mitsuoka "Do you come here often?" This one's natural.
 Ashley There are a lot of them!
 Do you all often pick up girls or guys?
 Rei Mitsuoka No, I don't.
 Daisuke Honda Me neither.
 Subaru Suzuki I do...a lot.
 Rei Mitsuoka & No way!
 Daisuke Honda
 Subaru Suzuki Just kidding.

Vocabulary

| Kanji | Kana | Romaji | English |
|-------|------|--------|------------------------|
| あまり | あまり | amari | not very |
| 全然 | ぜんぜん | zenzen | not... at all (adverb) |
| 旅館 | りょかん | ryokan | Japanese style inn |

| | | | |
|-------|--------|-----------|-------------------------------------|
| 本 | ほん | hon | book |
| ナンパ | ナンパ | nanpa | to hit on, to pick up |
| お嬢さん | おじょうさん | o-j -san | young lady, daughter |
| お茶 | おちゃ | o-cha | tea |
| まあまあ | まあまあ | m m | so-so |
| ここ | ここ | koko | here |
| 来る | くる | kuru | to come; V3 |
| プレゼント | プレゼント | purezento | present |
| テクニック | テクニック | tekunikku | technique |
| よく | よく | yoku | often |
| 自然 | しぜん | shizen | natural ; Adj(na) |
| 着る | きる | kiru | to wear, to put on; V2 |
| 面白い | おもしろい | omoshiroi | funny, interesting, amusing; Adj(i) |
| 古い | ふるい | furui | old (not person); Adj(i) |
| する | する | suru | to do ; V3 |
| 成功 | せいこう | seik | success |

Vocabulary Sample Sentences

5 私はお酒があまり好きじゃない。
全然わかりません。
近くに旅館がありますか。
この本はいくらですか。
私は、全然ナンパをしません。
お嬢さんのお名前は何かですか。
このお茶は熱い。
ここのすしは、まあまあです。
ここは禁煙です。
電車は何時に来ますか。
これはプレゼントです。どうぞ。
私は、バスケットボールのテクニックがありません。
よく音楽をききますか？
これは、自然な日本語ですか。
私は、着物をよく着る。
ピーターは面白いです。
古い歌が大好きです。
明日、何をしますか。

I don't really like alcohol.
I have no idea.
Is there a Japanese style inn nearby?
How much is this book?
I don't pick up girls at all.
What's your daughter's name?
This tea is hot.
The sushi here is so-so.
This place is no smoking.
What time will the train come?
This is a present. Here you are.
I don't have any techniques for playing basketball.
Do you listen to music a lot?
Is this natural Japanese?
I often wear kimono.
Peter is funny.
I love old songs.
What are you going to do tomorrow?

今日のイベントは大成功でした。

Today's event was a big success.

Grammar Points

Gengo Japanese Lesson #18 - How Often Will These Japanese Pick-Up Lines Work for You?

光岡さんはよく浴衣を着ますか。

Mitsuoka-san wa yoku yukata o kimasu ka.

"Mitsuoka-san, do you often wear yukata?"

In this lesson, you will:

Learn about Class 2 and Class 3 verbs

Learn various adverbs of frequency

Learn how to invite someone to do something with a negative question

Class 2 and Class 3 Verbs

In Lesson 14, we introduced the concept of the dictionary form of a verb (like iku/いく) as opposed to the masu form of a verb (like ikimasu/いきます). There are three classes of Japanese verbs: Class 1, Class 2, and Class 3 verbs. In this lesson, we will look at Class 2 and Class 3 verbs.

Three Verb Inflection Patterns

How can you tell which class a verb belongs to?

1. When masu is preceded by -i Class 1 verb
2. When masu is preceded by -e or a one syllable sound **Class 2 verb**
3. kimasu ("to come"), shimasu ("to do") **Class 3 verb or irregular verb**

Class 2 Verbs

| | Informal | | Formal | |
|--|-----------------------------|------------------------|----------------------------|----------|
| | Affirmative (dictionary) | Negative (nai form) | Affirmative (masu form) | Negative |

| | | | | |
|-----------------------|---------------|--------------------|---------------------|---------------------------|
| To wear | 着る kiru | 着ない kinai | 着ます kimasu | 着ません kimasen |
| To see | 見る miru | 見ない minai | 見ます mimasu | 見ません mimasen |
| To eat | 食べる taberu | 食べない tabenai | 食べます tabemasu | 食べません tabemasen |
| To exist (animate) | いる iru | いない inai | います imasu | いません imasen |
| rule | -る -ru | Drop -ru, add -nai | Drop -ru, add -masu | Drop -masu, add -masen |

Let's compare formal and informal speech in the following examples.

I eat meat.

Informal speech: 私は肉を食べる。(Watashi wa niku o taberu.)

Formal speech: 私は肉を食べます。(Watashi wa niku o tabemasu.)

I don't eat meat.

Informal speech: 私は肉を食べない。(Watashi wa niku o tabenai.)

Formal speech: 私は肉を食べません。(Watashi wa niku o tabemasen.)

Examples from the dialog:

1. アシュリー: 光岡さんはよく浴衣を着ますか。
Ashur : Mitsuoka-san wa yoku yukata o kimasu ka.
Ashley: "Mitsuoka-san, do you often wear yukata?"
2. 光岡れい: いや、あまり、着ませんね。
Mitsuoka Rei: Iya, amari, kimasen ne.
Rei Mitsuoka: "No, I don't usually wear them."

Class 3 Verbs

There are only two Class 3 verbs in Japanese, and they are both exceptions to the normal conjugation rules. The following table shows you how to create the negative of the informal and formal forms.

| | Informal | | Formal | |
|---------|-----------------------------|------------------------|----------------------------|------------------|
| | Affirmative (dictionary) | Negative (nai form) | Affirmative (masu form) | Negative |
| To wear | する suru | しない shinai | します shimasu | しません shimasen |
| To see | 来る kuru | 来ない konai | 来ます kimasu | 来ません kimasen |

Let's compare formal and informal speech in the following example.

| Formal | Informal | Translation |
|---|--------------------------------------|----------------------|
| 勉強をします。 Benky o shimasu. | 勉強をする。 Benky o suru. | "I study." |
| 勉強をしません。 Benky o shimasen. | 勉強をしない。 Benky o shinai. | "I don't study." |
| ここによく来ます。 Koko ni yoku kimasu. | ここによく来る。 Koko ni yoku kuru. | "I often come here." |
| ここにぜんぜん来ません。 Koko ni zenzen kimasen. | ここにぜんぜん来ない。 Koko ni zenzen konai. | "I never come here." |

Example:

アシュリー: 皆さんは、よくナンパをしますか。

Ashur: Mina-san wa, yoku nanpa o shimasu ka.

Ashley: "Do you all often pick up girls or guys?"

Adverbs of Frequency - How Often?

Being able to talk about how often you do or don't do something is an important skill in Japanese. Let's take a look at some common adverbs of frequency:

| | | |
|------------------|---------------------------------------|--|
| よく yoku | "often" | (私は)よく肉を食べます。 (Watashi wa) yoku niku o tabemasu. |
| ときどき tokidoki | "sometimes" | ときどき肉を食べます。 Tokidoki niku o tabemasu. |
| あまり amari | "not often" (used with negative verb) | あまり肉を食べません。 Amari niku o tabemasen. |

| | | |
|----------------|-----------------------------------|--|
| ぜんぜん zenzen | "never" (used with negative verb) | ぜんぜん肉を食べません。 Zenzen niku o tabemasen. |
|----------------|-----------------------------------|--|

Examples from the dialogue:

1. アシュリー: 光岡さんはよく浴衣を着ますか。
Ashur : Mitsuoka-san wa **yoku** yukata o kimasu ka.
Ashley: "Mitsuoka-san, do you **often** wear yukata?"
2. 光岡れい: いや、**あまり**、着ませんね。本田君は？よく、浴衣着る？
Mitsuoka Rei: Iya, **amari**, kimasen ne. Honda-kun wa? Yoku, yukata kiru?
Rei Mitsuoka: "No, I **don't usually** wear them. How about you, Honda-kun? Do you often wear yukata?"
3. 本田大介: **全然**着ないね。あ・・・でも旅館で時々、着るね。
Honda Daisuke: **Zenzen** kinai ne. A... demo ryokan de tokidoki, kiru ne.
Daisuke Honda: "I **never** do. Oh...but I sometimes wear them at Japanese-style inns."

Inviting Someone to Do Something

In the dialogue, the characters look through the book of pick-up lines. Some of these are to be used to invite someone to do something. You can use the negative form of a verb as a question (with rising intonation) to invite someone to do something.

Informal:

| Negative Form | Said with Rising Intonation | Sentence | Translation |
|---------------|-----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| しない shinai | しない？* shinai? | お茶をしない？ O-cha o shinai? | "Wanna go get some tea?"** |
| 見ない minai | 見ない？ minai? | 映画を見ない？ Eiga o minai? | "Wanna see a movie?" |

* Note that using ka (か) after the informal negative, as in shinai ka (しないか), is an example of male speech.

** O-cha o suru (お茶をする) is a common expression that literally means "go out for tea," but these days it doesn't always necessarily refer to getting tea. In most cases, it refers to going to a cafe or coffee shop and chatting over a drink such as coffee, tea, etc.

Formal:

| Negative Form | Said with Rising Intonation | Sentence | Translation |
|------------------|---|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| しません shimasen | しませんか？ (ka can be omitted) shimasen ka? | お茶をしませんか？ O-cha o shimasen ka? | "Would you like to go get some tea?" |
| 見ません mimasen | 見ませんか？ (ka can be omitted) mimasen ka? | 映画を見ませんか？ Eiga o mimasen ka? | "Would you like to see a movie?" |

Cultural Insight

Nanpa

In the dialogue, Ashley is given a book called Nanpa Technique 101 (Techniques for Getting a Date 101) as a gag gift. Nanpa is a word that refers to "picking up" or "hitting on" a member of the opposite sex, but in many cases it refers to the act of guys picking up girls. Even though this is a Japanese word, it is often written out using katakana.



Gengo Japanese S1

The Top Six Places You Have to See When You're in Japan

19

| | |
|---------------------|----|
| Formal Kanji | 2 |
| Formal Kana | 2 |
| Formal Romanization | 3 |
| English | 3 |
| Vocabulary | 4 |
| Grammar Points | 5 |
| Cultural Insight | 10 |

Formal Kanji

| | |
|---------|-------------------------------|
| 駅のアナウンス | 次は品川ー。品川ー。 |
| アシュリー | 皆さん、今日は、ありがとうございました。 |
| 鈴木すばる | 楽しかった？ |
| アシュリー | はい、とても楽しかったです。 |
| | 花火はとてもきれいでした。 |
| | お弁当もおいしかったです。 |
| | ごちそう様でした。 |
| 鈴木すばる | 今週、また、飲まない？ |
| アシュリー | あー、残念ですが、今週、会社に行きません。 |
| | ちょっと観光します。 |
| 本田大介 | へえー。どこに行くの。 |
| アシュリー | 築地と、浅草と、秋葉原と、富士山と鎌倉と、日光に行きます。 |
| 光岡れい | ええ？私の出身、日光！ |
| | 両親の家が日光にあります。 |
| | アシュリーさん、うちに泊まらない？ |
| アシュリー | ええ？いいですか。 |
| 光岡れい | うん、大丈夫。じゃ、あとで、連絡しますね。 |
| 本田大介 | よかったですね、アシュリーさん。 |
| 駅のアナウンス | 品川ー。品川ー。 |
| アシュリー | じゃあ、皆さん、また。 |

Formal Kana

| | |
|----------|-------------------------------|
| えきのアナウンス | つぎはしながわー。しながわー。 |
| アシュリー | みなさん、きょうは、ありがとうございました。 |
| すずきすばる | たのしかった？ |
| アシュリー | はい、とてもたのしかったです。 |
| | はなびはとてもきれいでした。 |
| | おべんとうもおいしかったです。 |
| | ごちそうさまでした。 |
| すずきすばる | こんしゅう、また、のまない？ |
| アシュリー | あー、ざんねんですが、こんしゅう、かいしゃにいきません。 |
| | ちょっとかんこうします。 |
| ほんだだいすけ | へえー。どこに行くの。 |
| アシュリー | つきじと、あさくさと、あきはばらと、ふじさんとかまくらと、 |

みつおかれい にっこうにいきます。
 ええ？わたしのしゅっしん、にっこう！
 りょうしんのいえがにっこうにあります。
 アシュリーさん、うちにとまらない？
 アシュリー ええ？いいですか。
 みつおかれい うん、だいじょうぶ。じゃ、あとで、れんらくしますね。
 ほんだだいすけ よかったですね、アシュリーさん。
 えきのアナウン ス しながわー。しながわー。
 アシュリー じゃあ、みなさん、また。

Formal Romanization

Eki no anaunsu Tsugi wa Shinagaw . Shinagaw .
 Ashur Mina-san, ky wa, arigat gozaimashita.
 Suzuki Subaru Tanoshikatta?
 Ashur Hai, totemo tanoshikatta desu.
 Hanabi wa totemo kirei deshita.
 O-bent mo oishikatta desu.
 Gochis -sama deshita.
 Suzuki Subaru Konsh , mata, nomanai?
 ashur , zannen desu ga, konsh , kaisha ni ikimasen.
 Chotto kank shimasu.
 Honda Daisuke H . Doko ni iku no.
 Ashur Tsukiji to, Asakusa to, Akihabara to, Fujisan to Kamakura to,
 Nikk ni ikimasu.
 Mitsuoka Rei ? Watashi no shusshin, Nikk !
 Ry shin no ie ga Nikk ni arimasu.
 Ashur -san, uchi ni tomaranai?
 Ashur ? li desu ka.
 Mitsuoka Rei Un, daij bu. Ja, ato de, renraku shimasu ne.
 Honda Daisuke Yokatta desu ne, Ashur -san.
 Eki no anaunsu Shinagaw . Shinagaw .
 Ashur J , mina-san, mata.

English

Station Next is Shinagawa...Shinagawa...

Announcement

Ashley Everyone, thank you so much for everything today.

Subaru Suzuki Did you have fun?

Ashley Yes, I had a lot of fun!

The fireworks were really pretty.

The bento was good too.

Thanks for the delicious meal.

Subaru Suzuki Want to go drinking again this week?

Ashley Ohh, unfortunately I won't be going to work this week.

I'm going to do a little sightseeing.

Daisuki Honda Really? Where are you going?

Ashley I'm going to Tsukiji, Asakusa, Akihabara, Mt. Fuji, Kamakura, and Nikko.

Rei Mitsuoka Oh? My hometown is Nikko!

My parents' house is in Nikko.

Ashley-san, why don't you stay at their house?

Ashley Eh? Is it okay?

Rei Mitsuoka Sure, it's okay! I'll contact you later, okay?

Daisuke Honda Lucky you, Ashley!

Station Shinagawa...Shinagawa...

Announcement

Ashley Okay, well, see you later everyone!

Vocabulary

| Kanji | Kana | Romaji | English |
|-------|-------|----------|-------------------------|
| きれい | きれい | kirei | beautiful;Adj(na) |
| 今週 | こんしゅう | konsh | this week |
| 飲む | のむ | nomu | to drink;V1 |
| 残念 | ざんねん | zannen | a shame, regrettable |
| ちょっと | ちょっと | chotto | a bit |
| うち | うち | uchi | house, home |
| 泊まる | とまる | tomaru | to stay;V1 |
| 連絡 | れんらく | renraku | contact, connect |
| 弁当 | べんとう | bent | boxed lunch |
| 楽しい | たのしい | tanoshii | fun, enjoyable ; Adj(i) |
| 会社 | かいしゃ | kaisha | company, corporation |
| 観光 | かんこう | kank | sightseeing |

| | | | |
|-----|-------|---------|---------|
| 両親 | りょうしん | ry shin | parents |
| あとで | あとで | ato de | later |
| また | また | mata | again |
| 家 | いえ | ie | house |

Vocabulary Sample Sentences

このイヤリングはきれいです。
 今週の日曜日、暇ですか。
 私は、朝、オレンジジュースを飲む。
 残念ですね。
 ちょっと、すみません。
 家（うち）のとなりに大きい家（いえ）がある。
 今日は、どこに泊まりますか。
 連絡をおねがいします。
 コンビニのお弁当はおいしいです。

鈴木さんは、楽しい人です。
 トヨタは日本の会社です。
 明日、観光する。
 両親の出身は成田です。
 あとでコンビニに行きます。
 じゃ、また。
 今、家を出ました。

These earrings are beautiful.
 Are you free this Sunday?
 I drink orange juice in the morning.
 That's too bad.
 Excuse me for a minute.
 There's a big house next to our home.
 Where are you staying today?
 Please contact me.
 The boxed lunches sold at convenience stores are good.
 Mr. Suzuki is a fun person.
 Toyota is a Japanese company.
 I'll do some sightseeing tomorrow.
 My parents are from Narita.
 I'll go to the convenience store later.
 See you later.
 I've just left my house.

Grammar Points

Gengo Japanese Lesson #19 - The Top Six Places You Have to See When You're in Japan

とても楽しかったです。

Totemo tanoshikatta desu.

"I had a lot of fun!"

In this lesson, you will:

Learn how to make the past tense of i-adjectives and na-adjectives

Learn about Class 1 verbs

Review how to invite someone to do something using a negative question

Past Tense of Adjectives

As we explained in Lesson 16, there are two different types of adjectives: i-adjectives, and na-adjectives. How we conjugate these adjectives depends on the type. In this lesson, we will learn how to create the past tense of both types of adjectives ("It was ~").

I-Adjectives

How do we create the informal past form?

Step 1: Drop the final i (い)

Step 2: Add katta (かった)

How do we create the formal past form?

Step 1: Drop the final i (い)

Step 2: Add katta (かった)

Step 3: Add desu (です)

| English | i-adjective | Drop final i (い) | Informal Past Add katta (かった) | Formal Past Add katta desu (です) |
|-----------|------------------|------------------|----------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| fun | たのしい tanoshii | たのし- tanoshi- | たのしかった tanoshikatta | たのしかったです tanoshikatta desu |
| delicious | おいしい oishii | おいし- oishi- | おいしかった oishikatta | おいしかったです oishikatta desu |

Examples:

- アシュリー: とても楽しかったです。
Ashur : Totemo tanoshikatta desu.
Ashley: "I had a lot of fun!" (Literally, "It was a lot of fun.")
- アシュリー: お弁当もおいしかったです。
Ashur : O-bent mo oishikatta desu.
Ashley: "The bento was good too."

Note that the i-adjective ii (いい), meaning "good" or "well," is an exception to this rule.

| Non-past | Past |
|----------|------------------------|
| いい ii | よかったです yokatta desu |

For all of the above examples, please remember that desu (です) only serves to make the phrase polite and is not needed when speaking informal Japanese.

Example:

本田大介: よかったですね、アシュリーさん。

Honda Daisuke: Yokatta desu ne, Ashur -san.

Daisuke Honda: "Lucky you, Ashley!" (Literally, "That's great, Ashley!")

Na-Adjectives

How do we create the informal past form?

Add datta (だった) to the dictionary form

How do we create the formal past form?

Add deshita (でした) to the dictionary form

| English | na-adjective | Informal Past Add datta (だった) | Formal Past Add deshita (でした) |
|-----------|--------------|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| beautiful | きれい kirei | きれいだった kirei datta | きれいでした kirei deshita |
| tough | 大変 taihen | 大変だった taihen datta | 大変でした taihen deshita |

Example:

アシュリー: 花火はとてもきれいでした。

Ashur : Hanabi wa totemo kirei deshita.

Ashley: "The fireworks were really pretty."

Class 1 Verbs

In the last lesson, we introduced Class 2 and Class 3 verbs and showed you how to make the dictionary form from the masu form. Now, we will take a look at Class 1 verbs.

Three Verb Inflection Patterns

How can you tell which class a verb belongs to?

1. When masu is preceded by -i **Class 1 verb**
2. When masu is preceded by -e or a one syllable sound **Class 2 verb**
3. kimasu ("to come"), shimasu ("to do") **Class 3 verb or irregular verb**

One example we saw in the dialogue was ikimasu (いきます), which means "to go." The following table shows you how to create the negative of the informal and formal forms.

| | Affirmative | | Negative | Rule |
|-----------------|-----------------|--|-------------------|--|
| Formal | いきます ikimasu | | いきません ikimasen | Drop -masu, add -masen |
| Informal | いく iku | | いかない ikanai | (1) Drop the final -u sound (2) Add -anai |

Let's also look at the verb nomimasu (のみます), which means "to drink."

| | Affirmative | | Negative | Rule |
|-----------------|------------------|--|--------------------|--|
| Formal | のみます nomimasu | | のみません nomimasen | Drop -masu, add -masen |
| Informal | のむ nomu | | のまない nomanai | (1) Drop the final -u sound (2) Add -anai |

Examples:

1. 鈴木すばる:今週、また、飲まない?
Suzuki Subaru: Konsh , mata, nomanai?
Subaru Suzuki: "Want to go drinking again this week?"
2. アシュリー:あー、残念ですが、今週、会社に行きません。
Ashur : A, zan'nen desu ga, konsh , kaisha ni ikimasen.
Ashley: "Ohh, unfortunately I won't be going to work this week."

Conjugation: Dictionary Form masu form informal negative form

| English | Dictionary Form | Masu Form | Plain Negative Form |
|------------|-----------------|------------------|---------------------|
| "to write" | 書く kaku | 書きます kakimasu | 書かない kakanai |
| "to speak" | 話す hanasu | 話します hanashimasu | 話さない hanasanai |
| "to wait" | 待つ matsu | 待ちます machimasu | 待たない matanai |
| "to die" | 死ぬ shinu | 死にます shinimasu | 死なない shinanai |

| | | | |
|-------------|------------|------------------|-----------------|
| "to drink" | 飲む nomu | 飲みます nomimasu | 飲まない nomanai |
| "to make" | 作る tsukuru | 作ります tsukurimasu | 作らない tsukuranai |
| "to swim" | 泳ぐ oyogu | 泳ぎます oyogimasu | 泳がない oyoganai |
| "to invite" | 呼ぶ yobu | 呼びます yobimasu | 呼ばない yobanai |

Reviewing How to Invite Someone to Do Something

We first introduced how to invite someone to do something with a negative question in Lesson 18. We saw more examples of this structure in this dialogue, so let's take a look at this topic again. To turn a statement into an invitation, remember that we use the negative form of a verb and turn it into a question using the question particle ka (か) when the verb is formal or by using rising intonation if the verb is informal.

Let's take a look at the examples from this dialogue:

1. 鈴木すばる: 今週、また、飲まない? (rising intonation)
Suzuki Subaru: Konsh , mata, nomanai?
Subaru Suzuki: "Want to go drinking again this week?"
2. 光岡れい: アシュリーさん、うちに泊まらない? (rising intonation)
Mitsuoka Rei: Ashur -san, uchi ni tomaranai?
Rei Mitsuoka: "Ashley-san, why don't you stay at their house?"

Vocab Usage: Thanks for the meal!

ごちそう様でした。[Gochis -sama deshita] "Thanks for the meal". After a meal, it ' s customary to say Gochis -sama deshita, which is like saying “ thank you for the meal ” . You can say this to the person who has made or paid for the meal, as well as to the staff at a restaurant.

In the Appendix

In this lesson, we saw some relative time expressions:

今日 - ky - today

今週 - konsh - this week

For more detailed information on relative time expressions, please check the following

Appendix lesson: Relative Time Expressions (Appendix #8).

Cultural Insight

Bent

Bent , or o-bent (which were also mentioned in All About Japanese Lesson 7 on Japanese cuisine), are "boxed lunches" or meals served in a box that are either prepared at home or bought at restaurants and convenience stores. A typical bent includes rice, fish or meat, and some pickled vegetables as a side dish, but it is possible to find a wide variety of bent . You can find reasonably-priced bent at convenience stores as well as high-class, gourmet bent at department stores or restaurants. One special type of bent that is sold exclusively at train stations and on trains is the ekiben (駅弁) which combines the word for train station, eki (駅) and the first part of the word bent (弁当). Definitely try a bent if you get the chance!



Gengo Japanese S1

You Had Better Ask This Question Before You Do This in Japan

20

| | |
|---------------------|---|
| Formal Kanji | 2 |
| Formal Kana | 2 |
| Formal Romanization | 3 |
| English | 3 |
| Vocabulary | 4 |
| Grammar Points | 5 |
| Cultural Insight | 9 |

Formal Kanji

(江戸東京博物館)

アシュリー あ、すみません、この電車は両国に行きますか。
 おばさん え？両国？行かないよ。
 でも、あの総武線は行く。
 アシュリー そうぶせ？どれですか。
 おばさん あれ。あの、黄色い電車。わかる？
 アシュリー あー、はい。わかりました。
 ありがとうございます。

係員 ようこそ、江戸東京博物館へ。
 アシュリー 大人一枚、お願いします。
 係員 600円です。
 今日、一時からお茶会があります。
 出席しませんか。無料です。
 アシュリー むりょう？むりょうは。。。何ですか。
 係員 ただです。ゼロ円です。
 アシュリー じゃ、参加します。
 写真、大丈夫ですか。
 係員 はい、大丈夫です。

(パシャ)
 係員 お客様、フラッシュは駄目です。

Formal Kana

(えどとうきょうはくぶつかん)

アシュリー あ、すみません、このでんしゃはりょうごくにいけますか。
 おばさん え？りょうごく？いけないよ。
 でも、あのそうぶせんはいく。
 アシュリー そうぶせ？どれですか。
 おばさん あれ。あの、きいろいでんしゃ。わかる？
 アシュリー あー、はい。わかりました。
 ありがとうございます。

かかりいん ようこそ、えどとうきょうはくぶつかんへ。
 アシュリー おとないちまい、おねがいします。
 かかりいん ろっぴゃくえんです。

アシュリー
かかりいん
アシュリー

かかりいん
(パシャ)
かかりいん

きょう、いちじからおちゃかいがあります。

しゅっせきしませんか。むりょうです。

むりょう？むりょうは。。。なんですか。

ただです。ゼロえんです。

じゃ、さんかします。

しゃしん、だいじょうぶですか。

はい、だいじょうぶです。

おきゃくさま、フラッシュはだめです。

Formal Romanization

(Edo T ky Hakubutsukan)

Ashur Ano, sumimasen, kono densha wa Ry goku ni ikimasu ka.

Oba-san E? Ry goku? Ikanai yo.

Demo, ano S bu-sen wa iku.

Ashur S buse? Dore desu ka.

Oba-san Are. Ano, kiroi densha. Wakaru?

Ashur , hai. Wakarimashita.

Arigat gozaimashita.

Kakari-in Y koso, Edo T ky Hakubutsukan e.

Ashur Otona ichi-mai, onegai shimasu.

Kakari-in Roppyaku-en desu.

Ky , ichi-ji kara o-chakai ga arimasu.

Shusseki shimasen ka. Mury desu.

Ashur Mury ? Mury wa... nan desu ka.

Kakari-in Tada desu. Zero-en desu.

Ashur Ja, sanku shimasu.

Shashin, daij bu desu ka.

Kakari-in Hai, daij bu desu.

(pasha)

Kakari-in O-kyaku-sama, furasshu wa dame desu.

English

(At Edo Tokyo Museum)

Ashley Um, excuse me; does this train go to Ryogoku?
 Old lady Huh? Ryogoku? No, it doesn't.
 But that Sobu-sen does.
 Ashley Sobuse? Which one?
 Old lady That one. That yellow train. Do you understand?
 Ashley Oh, yes. I understand.
 Thank you very much!

Clerk Welcome to the Edo Tokyo Museum.
 Ashley One adult ticket please.
 Clerk It's 600 yen.
 Today at one, there's a tea ceremony.
 Would you like to participate? It's "mury ."
 Ashley "Mury ?" What's "mury ?"
 Clerk It's free. Zero yen.
 Ashley Okay then, I'll participate.
 Is it okay to take pictures?
 Clerk Yes, it's okay.
 (snap)
 Clerk Ma'am, you can't use flash.

Vocabulary

| Kanji | Kana | Romaji | English |
|-------|--------|--------------|----------------------|
| 博物館 | はくぶつかん | hakubutsukan | museum |
| 電車 | でんしゃ | densha | train |
| 総武線 | そうぶせん | S bu-sen | Sobu line |
| 出席 | しゅっせき | shusseki | attendance, presence |
| ただ | ただ | tada | free |
| 参加 | さんか | sanka | participation |
| 写真 | しゃしん | shashin | photograph, picture |
| フラッシュ | フラッシュ | furasshu | flash |
| お茶会 | おちゃかい | o-cha kai | tea ceremony |
| 黄色い | きいろい | kiroi | yellow; Adj (i) |
| 無料 | むりょう | mury | free, no charge |
| 江戸 | えど | Edo | old name of Tokyo |

Vocabulary Sample Sentences

明日、博物館に行きます。

電車が好きです。

総武線はどれですか。

私は、明日のミーティングに出席しません。

お茶はただです。でも、コーヒーは100円です。

東京マラソンに参加します。

これは、私の子供の写真です。

このカメラはフラッシュがありません。

お茶会に参加します。

あの黄色い花の名前は、何ですか。

これは無料ですか。

江戸は東京の古い名前です。

I'm going to a museum tomorrow.

I love trains.

Which line is the Sobu line?

I'm not going to attend the meeting tomorrow.

Tea is free, but the coffee is 100yen.

I'm going to participate in the Tokyo Marathon.

This is a picture of my child.

This camera doesn't have a flash.

I'm going to participate in a tea ceremony.

What's the name of that yellow flower over there?

Is this free?

Edo is the old name of Tokyo.

Grammar Points

Gengo Japanese Lesson #20 - You Had Better Ask This Question Before You Do This in Japan

あの、すみません、この電車は両国に行きますか。

Ano, sumimasen, kono densha wa Ryogoku ni ikimasu ka.

"Um, excuse me, does this train go to Ryogoku?"

In this lesson, you will:

Review Class 1 verbs

Learn how to ask about transportation

Review daij and dame

Review of Class 1 verbs

Remember that you can identify verbs (in their masu form) as Class 1 verbs when the masu is preceded by -i.

Let's look at the example of ikimasu (いきます) again:

| | | | | |
|--------|-----------------|--|-------------------|------------------------|
| Formal | いきます ikimasu | | いきません ikimasen | Drop -masu, add -masen |
|--------|-----------------|--|-------------------|------------------------|

| | | | | |
|----------|-----------|--|----------------|---|
| Informal | いく iku | | いかない ikanai | (1) Drop the final -u sound (2) Add -anai |
|----------|-----------|--|----------------|---|

In the dialogue, we also had the verb *wakarimasu*, another example of a Class 1 verb.

| | | | | |
|----------|---------------------|--|-----------------------|---|
| Formal | わかります wakarimasu | | わかりません wakarimasen | Drop -masu, add -masen |
| Informal | わかる wakaru | | わからない wakaranai | (1) Drop the final -u sound (2) Add -anai |

Examples:

1. おばさん: あれ。あの、黄色い電車。わかる？
Oba-san: Are. Ano, kiroi densha. Wakaru?
Old lady: "That one. That yellow train. Do you understand?"
2. アシュリー: あー、はい。わかりました。
Ashur: , hai. Wakarimashita.
Ashley: "Oh, yes. I understand."

Asking About Transportation

In the dialogue, Ashley asked a stranger if a train was going to Ryogoku, where she wanted to go. Let's see how we can ask these kinds of useful transportation questions:

Kono [transportation] wa [place] e/ni ikimasu ka?

| "This" | Transportation | Topic Particle | Place | Direction Particle | "to go" + Question | Translation |
|------------|----------------|----------------|------------|--------------------|---------------------|------------------------------------|
| この Kono | 電車 densha | は wa | 東京 T ky | に ni | 行きますか ikimasu ka | "Does this train go to Tokyo?" |
| この Kono | バス basu | は wa | 駅 eki | に ni | 行きますか ikimasu ka | "Does this bus go to the station?" |

Example:

アシュリー: あれ、すみません、この電車は両国に行きますか。
Ashur: Ano, sumimasen, kono densha wa ryogoku ni ikimasu ka.

Ashley: "Um, excuse me; does this train go to Ryogoku?"

Reviewing Daij bu/Dame

We first introduced daij bu (大丈夫) and dame (だめ) in Lesson 8. Daij bu means, "it's okay" or "it's all right," while dame is the opposite and means "not okay" or "not all right." What is being referred to as "okay" or "not okay" depends on context.

In this dialogue, daij bu (大丈夫) and dame (だめ) refer to the acts of taking a picture and using the camera flash, respectively.

Statement:

| Topic | Topic Particle | okay/ not okay | Copula |
|---------------|----------------|----------------------------|------------|
| [something] | は wa | 大丈夫 / だめ daij bu / dame | です desu |

Question:

| Topic | Topic Particle | okay/ not okay | Copula | Question Particle |
|---------------|----------------|----------------------------|------------|-------------------|
| [something] | は wa | 大丈夫 / だめ daij bu / dame | です desu | か ka |

Examples:

- アシュリー: 写真、大丈夫ですか。
Ashur: Shashin, daij bu desu ka.
Ashley: "Is it okay to take pictures?" (Literally, "Are pictures okay?")
- 係員: はい、大丈夫です。
Kakari'in: Hai, daij bu desu.
Clerk: "Yes, it's okay."
- 係員: お客様、フラッシュは駄目です。
Kakari'in: O-kyaku-sama, furasshu wa dame desu.
Clerk: "Ma'am, you can't use flash." (Literally, "Flash is not okay.")

Vocabulary Building: Color and Transportation Vocabulary

In the dialogue, there was a reference to a kiroi densha (黄色い電車), or a "yellow train."

Let's take a look at more color-related and transportation vocabulary.

Color Vocabulary

| | |
|----------------|--------|
| 赤い akai | red |
| 黄色い kiiroi | yellow |
| 青い aoi | blue |
| 茶色い chairoi | brown |
| 白い shiroi | white |
| 黒い kuroi | black |

Transportation Vocabulary

| | |
|-------------------|--------------|
| 電車 densha | train |
| バス basu | bus |
| 地下鉄 chikatetsu | subway, tube |
| 飛行機 hik ki | airplane |
| タクシー takush | taxi |
| 車 kuruma | car |

Cultural Insight

Edo Tokyo Museum and the National Sports Arena

Edo Tokyo Museum, or Edo T ky Hakubutsukan (江戸東京博物館) in Japanese, is a museum dedicated to the history of Tokyo. Edo is the former name of Tokyo that was used until 1868 when the Tokugawa shogunate came to an end. At this museum, there are numerous exhibitions where you can see how Tokyo has evolved throughout the ages, and free tours are available in multiple languages (reservations required in advance). Edo Tokyo Museum is located in Ryogoku, where the National Sports Arena, or Kokugikan (国技館) is also located. Many sumo matches are held at the National Sports Arena. If you are interesting in seeing a sumo match, it's important to note that they are only held during odd-numbered months, and out of those months, matches are only held at the National Sports Arena in January, May, and September. If you are interested in reserving seats or would like to go on the weekend, it is probably a good idea to buy tickets in advance.



Gengo Japanese S1

Get the Best Table in the Restaurant and Have the Best Dish in Town

21

| | |
|---------------------|---|
| Formal Kanji | 2 |
| Formal Kana | 2 |
| Formal Romanization | 3 |
| English | 3 |
| Vocabulary | 4 |
| Grammar Points | 5 |
| Cultural Insight | 8 |

Formal Kanji

| | |
|-------|-------------------------------|
| 店員 | いらっしゃいませ。何名様ですか。 |
| アシュリー | 一人です。 |
| 店員 | おタバコは？ |
| アシュリー | すいません。 |
| 店員 | では、こちらへどうぞ。 |
| アシュリー | あ、すみません。あそこに座りたいです。 いいですか。 |
| 店員 | はい。でも、喫煙席ですよ。 大丈夫ですか。 |
| アシュリー | はい、大丈夫です。 |
| 店員 | ご注文は。 |
| アシュリー | 辛いものが食べたいです。 お勧めは何ですか。 |
| 店員 | 野菜カレー、タイラーメン、唐辛子そばです。 |
| アシュリー | 一番人気はどれですか。 |
| 店員 | 野菜カレーです。 |
| アシュリー | じゃ、それをください。 |

Formal Kana

| | |
|-------|--------------------------------|
| てんいん | いらっしゃいませ。なんめいさまですか。 |
| アシュリー | ひとりです。 |
| てんいん | おタバコは？ |
| アシュリー | すいません。 |
| てんいん | では、こちらへどうぞ。 |
| アシュリー | あ、すみません。あそこにすわりたいです。 いいですか。 |
| てんいん | はい。でも、きつえんせきですよ。 だいじょうぶですか。 |
| アシュリー | はい、だいじょうぶです。 |
| てんいん | ごちゅうもんは。 |
| アシュリー | からいものがたべたいです。 おすすめはなんですか。 |
| てんいん | やさいカレー、タイラーメン、とうがらしそばです。 |

アシュリー いちばんにんきはどれですか。
 てんいん やさいカレーです。
 アシュリー じゃ、それをください。

Formal Romanization

Ten'in Irasshaimase. Nan-mei-sama desu ka.
 Ashur Hitori desu.
 Ten'in O-tabako wa?
 Ashur Suimasen.
 Ten'in Dewa, kochira e d zo.
 Ashur A, sumimasen. Asoko ni suwaritai desu.
 li desu ka.
 Ten'in Hai. Demo, kitsuen seki desu yo.
 Daij bu desu ka.
 Ashur Hai, daij bu desu.

Ten'in Go-ch mon wa.
 Ashur Karai mono ga tabetai desu.
 O-susume wa nan desu ka.

Ten'in Yasai kar , Tai r men, t garashi soba desu.
 Ashur Ichi-ban ninki wa dore desu ka.
 Ten'in Yasai kar desu.
 Ashur Ja, sore o kudasai.

English

Clerk Welcome. How many people?
 Ashley One.
 Clerk Will you be smoking?
 Ashley No.
 Clerk This way please.
 Ashley Oh, excuse me. I'd like to sit over there.
 Is that okay?
 Clerk Yes, but it's in the smoking section.
 Is that okay with you?
 Ashley Yes, that's fine.

Clerk May I take your order?
 Ashley I'd like to eat something spicy.
 What's your recommendation?
 Clerk The vegetable curry, Thai ramen, and chili soba.
 Ashley Which one is most popular?
 Clerk The vegetable curry.
 Ashley Okay, then I'll have that.

Vocabulary

| Kanji | Kana | Romaji | English |
|-------|--------|--------------|--------------------------|
| 一人 | ひとり | hitori | one person |
| すう | すう | s | to smoke, to inhale; V1 |
| 注文 | ちゅうもん | ch mon | order |
| もの | もの | mono | thing |
| カレー | カレー | kar | curry |
| ラーメン | ラーメン | r men | ramen noodles |
| そば | そば | soba | soba (buckwheat noodles) |
| 一番 | いちばん | ichi-ban | best, first |
| 人気 | にんき | ninki | popular |
| どれ | どれ | dore | which (one) |
| たばこ | たばこ | tabako | cigarettes |
| 唐辛子 | とうがらし | t garashi | chili pepper |
| 座る | すわる | suwaru | to sit ; V1 |
| 喫煙席 | きつえんせき | kitsuen seki | smoking section |
| 辛い | からい | karai | spicy, hot ; Adj (i) |
| 食べる | たべる | taberu | to eat, to have ; V2 |
| 野菜 | やさい | yasai | vegetable |
| タイ | タイ | Tai | Thailand |

Vocabulary Sample Sentences

兄が、一人います。
 タバコをすいますか。
 お客様、ご注文は？
 甘いものが食べたいです。

I have an older brother.
 Do you smoke?
 Are you ready to order, sir/ma'am?
 I want to eat something sweet.

カレーが大好きです。
 いいラーメン屋はありますか。
 そばが食べたいです。
 私はイクラの寿司が一番好きだ。
 日本のアニメは人気がある。
 どれが好きですか。
 たばこをよく吸いますか。
 唐辛子が嫌いです。
 禁煙席に座りたいです。
 喫煙席はありますか。
 辛いものが大好きです。
 朝ごはんを食べますか。
 それは野菜です。
 タイに行きたいです。

I love curry.
 Are there any good ramen places?
 I want to eat buckwheat noodles.
 My favorite sushi is ikura (salted salmon roe).
 Japanese anime is very popular.
 Which one do you like?
 Do you often smoke?
 I don't like chili peppers.
 I'd like to sit in the non-smoking section.
 Is there a smoking section?
 I love spicy food.
 Do you eat breakfast?
 That's a vegetable.
 I want to go to Thailand.

Grammar Points

Gengo Japanese Lesson #21 - Get the Best Table in the Restaurant and Have the Best Dish in Town

いらっしゃいませ。何名様ですか。

Irasshaimase. Nan-mei-sama desu ka.

"Welcome. How many people?"

In this lesson, you will:

- Learn how to express the desire to do something using -tai (-たい)
- Learn some useful restaurant phrases
- Learn how to count people

Expressing the Desire to Do Something

In this dialogue, Ashley indicated where she wanted to sit and what she wanted to eat using -tai (-たい). To express our desire to do something, we attach -tai (-たい) to the stem of a verb. To make the phrase polite, we can add the copula desu (です) at the end.

[verb stem + tai + desu]

| Masu Verb | Verb Stem | +tai (desu) | Translation |
|-----------------|-------------|----------------------------|-------------------|
| 行きます ikimasu | 行き- iki- | 行きたい (です) ikitai (desu) | "I want to go..." |

| | | | |
|--------------------|----------------|-------------------------------|--------------------|
| 見ます mimasu | 見- mi- | 見たい (です) mitai (desu) | "I want to see..." |
| 食べます tabemasu | 食べ- tabe- | 食べたい (です) tabetai (desu) | "I want to eat..." |
| 座ります suwarimasu | 座り- suwari- | 座りたい (です) suwaritai (desu) | "I want to sit..." |
| します shimasu | し- shi- | したい (です) shitai (desu) | "I want to do..." |

Examples from the Dialogue:

1. アシュリー: あ、すみません。あそこに座りたいです。
Ashur : A, sumimasen. Asoko ni suwaritai desu.
Ashley: "Oh, excuse me. I'd like to sit over there."
2. アシュリー: 辛いものが食べたいです。
Ashur : Karai mono ga tabetai desu.
Ashley: "I'd like to eat something spicy."

Other Examples:

1. 今年、日本に行きたいです。
Kotoshi, Nihon ni ikitai desu.
"I want to go to Japan this year."
2. あの映画を見たいです。
Ano eiga o mitai desu.
"I want to see that movie."

Useful Restaurant Phrases

In this dialogue, Ashley went to a restaurant by herself, where she asked and was asked many questions that are typically heard at restaurants.

| | | |
|----------|--------------------------|--------------------|
| 何名さまですか？ | Nan-mei-sama desu ka? | "How many people?" |
|----------|--------------------------|--------------------|

When restaurant staff ask about the number of people in your party, they will use the counter mei (名), often followed by the honorific suffix sama (さま).

| | | |
|--------|---------------|------------------------------------|
| おタバコは？ | O-tabako wa? | "Will you smoke?" |
| ご注文は？ | Go-ch mon wa? | "Can I take your order?" |
| おすすめは？ | O-susume wa? | "Do you have any recommendations?" |

These three examples all end with the particle wa (は) to form a question, a construction we introduced in Lesson 4.

1. O-tabako wa (おタバコは？) is short for O-tabako wa suimasu ka? (おタバコは吸いますか?). Suimasu (吸います) is a verb that means "to smoke."
2. Go-ch mon (ご注文) means "order," and this phrase is short for Go-ch mon wa nan desu ka? (ご注文は何ですか.).
3. O-susume (おすすめ) means "recommendation," and this phrase is short for O-susume wa arimasu ka (おすすめはありますか?).

| | | |
|---------|-----------------|--------------------|
| こちらどうぞ。 | Kochira e d zo. | "This way please." |
|---------|-----------------|--------------------|

Kochira (こちら) means "this way," and is followed by the direction particle e (へ). D zo (どうぞ) was covered in All About Japanese Lesson #5. This is a polite phrase used to guide someone somewhere. It is often heard at restaurants when the staff leads you to your table as well as in business situations when escorting someone.

| | | |
|-------------|---------------------|---------------------------|
| じゃ、それをください。 | Ja, sore o kudasai. | "I'll take that, please." |
|-------------|---------------------|---------------------------|

When the restaurant staff tells you their recommendation, you can use this phrase to indicate that you would like to have that.

Counting People

To count people, we put nin (人), meaning "person," after the number. Note that the words for "one person" and "two people" are irregular.

This way of counting people is the standard way. It's different from the counter mei (名) that we saw in this lesson as well as in Lesson 8, which is a more polite term used to count people.

| | | |
|----|---------|----------------|
| 一人 | hitori* | "one person" |
| 二人 | futari* | "two people" |
| 三人 | san-nin | "three people" |
| 四人 | yo-nin | "four people" |

| | | |
|----|------------------------|-----------------------|
| 五人 | go-nin | "five people" |
| 六人 | roku-nin | "six people" |
| 七人 | nana-nin shichi-nin | "seven people" |
| 八人 | hachi-nin | "eight people" |
| 九人 | kyu-nin ku-nin | "nine people" |
| 十人 | jū-nin | "ten people" |
| 何人 | nan-nin | "How many people...?" |

*Irregular forms

In the Appendix

In this lesson, we saw some another counter, nin (人), being used to count people. For more detailed information on this and other counters, please check the following Appendix lessons: Counters (Appendix #7).

Cultural Insight

Curry, Japanese Style

One thing you might be surprised to hear is that curry is very popular in Japan-Japanese curry, that is. The Japanese have taken curry and made it their own, and as a result, it is very different from authentic Indian curry. A typical Japanese curry uses meat, potatoes, carrots, and onions, although there are many different varieties of Japanese curry available. Coco Ichibanya (CoCo壱番屋) is a well-known chain restaurant that specializes in Japanese curry. They have an extensive menu with numerous varieties of curry and ten levels of spiciness to choose from. The name of the restaurant is also interesting, translating to "This place is the best," or "We are number one." Koko (ここ) means "here," and ichi-ban (一番) means "best," or "number one." With a name like that, you might just be tempted to try it!



Gengo Japanese S1

Find Out About the Place Japanese People Go To Have a Good Time

22

| | |
|---------------------|---|
| Formal Kanji | 2 |
| Formal Kana | 2 |
| Formal Romanization | 3 |
| English | 3 |
| Vocabulary | 4 |
| Grammar Points | 5 |
| Cultural Insight | 9 |

Formal Kanji

| | |
|-------|---------------------------------|
| 屋台の人1 | いらっしやい！お好み焼きいかがですか。 |
| 屋台の人2 | お姉さん、かき氷、買わない？ 安くておいしいよ。 |
| アシュリー | これ、なんですか。 |
| 屋台の人3 | たい焼き。 |
| アシュリー | 魚ですか。 |
| 屋台の人3 | 違うよ。中はあん。 |
| アシュリー | はい？...中は何ですか？ |
| 屋台の人3 | あんこ。甘い豆。 甘くておいしいよ。 |
| アシュリー | これは、いくらですか。 |
| 屋台の人3 | 一つ、130円 三つ、300円 |
| アシュリー | じゃ、一つください。 |
| 屋台の人3 | はい、130円ね。 |
| アシュリー | お釣りありますか。 |
| 屋台の人3 | え？一万円？小銭、ない？ |
| アシュリー | すみません。ありません。 |
| 屋台の人3 | しょうがないなあ・・・。 はい、お釣り。九千八百七十円。 |

Formal Kana

| | |
|---------|---------------------------------|
| やたいのひと1 | いらっしやい！おこのみやきいかがですか。 |
| やたいのひと2 | おねえさん、かきごおり、かわない？ やすくておいしいよ。 |
| アシュリー | これ、なんですか。 |
| やたいのひと3 | たいやき。 |
| アシュリー | さかなですか。 |
| やたいのひと3 | ちがうよ。なかはあん。 |
| アシュリー | はい？...なかはなんですか？ |
| やたいのひと3 | あんこ。あまいまめ。 あまくておいしいよ。 |
| アシュリー | これは、いくらですか。 |
| やたいのひと3 | ひとつ、ひゃくさんじゅうえん みつつ、さんびゃくえん |

| | |
|---------|---------------------------|
| アシュリー | じゃ、ひとつください。 |
| やたいのひと3 | はい、ひゃくさんじゅうえんね。 |
| アシュリー | おつりありますか。 |
| やたいのひと3 | え? いちまんえん? こぜに、ない? |
| アシュリー | すみません。ありません。 |
| やたいのひと3 | しょうがないなあ・・・。 |
| | はい、おつり。きゅうせんはっぴゃくななじゅうえん。 |

Formal Romanization

| | |
|-----------------|---|
| Yatai no hito1 | Irasshai! Okonomiyaki ikaga desu ka. |
| Yatai no hito2 | O-n -san, kakig ri, kawanai? |
| | Yasukute oishii yo. |
| Ashur | Kore, nan desu ka. |
| Yatai no hito 3 | Taiyaki. |
| Ashur | Sakana desu ka. |
| Yatai no hito 3 | Chigau yo. Naka wa an. |
| Ashur | Hai?... Naka wa nan desu ka? |
| Yatai no hito 3 | Anko. Amai mame. |
| | Amakute oishii yo. |
| Ashur | Kore wa, ikura desu ka. |
| Yatai no hito 3 | Hitotsu, hyaku sanj -en |
| | mittsu, san-byaku-en |
| Ashur | Ja, hitotsu kudasai. |
| Yatai no hito3 | Hai, hyaku sanj -en ne. |
| Ashur | O-tsuru arimasu ka. |
| Yatai no hito3 | E? Ichi-man-en? Kozeni, nai? |
| Ashur | Sumimasen. Arimasen. |
| Yatai no hito3 | Sh ganai n |
| | Hai, o-tsuru. Ky -sen ha-ppyaku nana-j -en. |

English

| | |
|-----------------|--|
| Street vendor 1 | Welcome! How about some okonomiyaki? |
| Street vendor 2 | Young lady, would you like to buy some shaved ice? |
| | It's cheap and delicious! |
| Ashley | What's this? |

Street vendor 3 It's taiyaki.
 Ashley Is it fish?
 Street vendor 3 No, there's "an" in the middle.
 Ashley I'm sorry? There's what in the middle?
 Street vendor 3 Anko. Sweet beans.
 It's sweet and tastes great!
 Ashley How much is it?
 Street vendor 3 One for 130 yen,
 or 3 for 300 yen.
 Ashley Okay, I'll take one please.
 Street vendor 3 That'll be 130 yen.
 Ashley Do you have change?
 Street vendor 3 Huh? 10,000 yen? You don't have any smaller change?
 Ashley Sorry. I don't.
 Street vendor 3 Guess it can't be helped...
 Here's your change. 9,870 yen.

Vocabulary

| Kanji | Kana | Romaji | English |
|----------|-----------|--------------|---|
| お好み焼き | おこのみやき | okonomiyaki | Pancake cooked on a hot plate with meat, seafood and vegetables |
| 違う | ちがう | chigau | to differ, to be different ; V1 |
| 豆 | まめ | mame | beans, peas |
| 一万 | いちまん | ichi-man | ten thousand |
| 小銭 | こぜに | kozeni | small change |
| しょうがない | しょうがない | sh ga nai | can't be helped; Adj(i) |
| お姉さん | おねえさん | o-n -san | elder sister, young lady, miss |
| たい焼き | たいやき | taiyaki | fish-shaped pancake stuffed with bean jam |
| あん | あん | an | bean paste |
| あんこ | あんこ | anko | bean paste |
| かき氷 | かきごおり | kakig ri | shaved ice |
| 買う 安い | かう やすい | kau yasui | to buy ; V1 cheap, inexpensive ; |
| | | | |

| | | | Adj(i) |
|---|-----|--------|---------------------------|
| 魚 | さかな | sakana | fish |
| 中 | なか | naka | inside, in, among, middle |

Vocabulary Sample Sentences

お好み焼きは、とてもおいしいです。
 それは、違います。
 あれは豆です。
 一万円しかありません。
 今、小銭しかない。
 しょうがないですね。
 お姉さんがいますか。
 たい焼きを買いたいです。
 たい焼きのあんが好きです。
 たけしさんは、あんこが嫌いです。
 かき氷が大好きです。
 ビスケットを九個買います。
 安い車を買いたいです。
 バケツに魚がいます。
 ポケットの中に何がありますか。

Okonomiyaki is delicious.
 That's not right.
 Those are beans.
 I only have ten thousand yen.
 I only have small change now.
 I have no other choices.
 Do you have a elder sister?
 I want to buy fish-shaped pancakes.
 I like the bean paste in taiyaki.
 Takeshi doesn't like bean paste.
 I love shaved ice.
 I'll buy nine biscuits.
 I want to buy a cheap car.
 There is a fish in the bucket.
 What do you have in your pocket?

Grammar Points

Gengo Japanese Lesson #22 - Find Out About the Place Japanese People Go To Have a Good Time

安くておいしいよ。

Yasukute oishii yo.

"It's sweet and tastes great!"

In this lesson, you will:

Learn how to combine two or more adjectives

Learn some phrases used while shopping

Learn the function of the particle n (なあ)

Combining Two or More Adjectives

When we use two (or more) adjectives to describe a thing or a person, we can combine them into one sentence by changing all adjectives except the last one into the te-form.

How to create the te-form of i-adjectives:

1. Drop the final -i (い)
2. Add -kute (くて)

| English | Dictionary Form | te-form |
|---------------|---------------------|-------------------------|
| "cheap" | やすい yasui | やすくて yasukute |
| "delicious" | おいしい oishii | おいしくて oishikute |
| "sweet" | あまい amai | あまくて amakute |
| "fun" | たのしい tanoshii | たのしくて tanoshikute |
| "difficult" | むずかしい muzukashii | むずかしくて muzukashikute |
| "interesting" | おもしろい omoshiroi | おもしろくて omoshirokute |
| "bad" | わるい warui | わるくて warukute |
| "good" | いい ii | よくて* yokute |

*Note that ii (いい) is an exception to the rule.

How to create the te-form of na-adjectives:

1. Drop the final na (な) to get the dictionary form
2. Add de (で)

| English | Dictionary Form | te-form |
|---------------------|-----------------|--------------------|
| "energetic", "fine" | 元気 genki | 元気で genki de |
| "quiet" | しずか shizuka | しずかで shizuka de |

| | | |
|--------------------------------|----------------|--------------------|
| "pretty", "clean", "beautiful" | きれい kirei | きれいで kirei de |
| "tough" | たいへん taihen | たいへんで taihen de |

Now that you know how to put both types of adjectives into the te-form, you can create sentences where you use two or more adjectives. When using multiple adjectives, all adjectives except the last one must be in the te-form. Note that the adjectives combined must be all favorable or all unfavorable in the meaning. Let's look at some examples:

Examples From the Dialogue:

1. Street vendor2: (カキ氷は)安くておいしいよ。
Street vendor2: (Kaki g ri wa) yasukute oishii yo.
Street vendor2: "(Shaved ice) is cheap and delicious!"
2. Street vendor 3: (あんこは)甘くておいしいよ。
Street vendor 3: (Anko wa) amakute oishii yo.
Street vendor 3: "(Anko is) sweet and tastes great!"

Other Examples:

1. 鈴木さんは元気でおもしろいです。
Suzuki-san wa genki de omoshiroi desu.
"Mr. Suzuki is energetic and funny."
2. 鈴木さんは元気でおもしろくてしんせつです。
Suzuki-san wa genki de omoshirokute shinsetsu desu.
"Mr. Suzuki is energetic, funny, and kind."

Shopping Phrases

In the dialogue, Ashley had to ask the price of an item as well as ask the street vendor if they had change. Let's look at these and other useful phrases used when shopping.

A useful phrase we can use to ask for the price of anything.

| | |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------|
| これはいくらですか。 Kore wa ikura desu ka. | "How much is this?" |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------|

A phrase we can use when we have decided what we want. We can replace hitotsu (一つ, "one") with other counters to specify different amounts. See Appendix #7 for a full list of counters.

| | |
|-----------------------------|-----------------|
| 一つください。 Hitotsu kudasai. | "I'll take one" |
|-----------------------------|-----------------|

O-tsure (おつり) refers to "change." If all you have is a large bill to pay with, you might want to ask if they have enough change.

| | |
|--|---------------------------|
| おつり(は)ありますか。 O-tsure (wa) arimasu ka. | "Do you have any change?" |
|--|---------------------------|

Kozeni (こぜに) refers to "small bills" or "small change."

| | |
|---------------|----------------|
| こぜに Kozeni | "small change" |
|---------------|----------------|

The Particle N (なあ)

The sentence-ending particle n (なあ) can express either positive feelings such as happiness, thankfulness, and admiration, or negative feelings such as unhappiness, envy, pity, ridicule, and contempt. It can be similar to "How ____!" or "What ____!" in English. When the street vendor uses it after the phrase shōga nai [しょうがない] or "it can't be helped", he is mostly saying it to himself, and not saying it directly to Ashley.

Example:

1. アシュリー: すみません。これしかありません。
Ashur: Sumimasen. Kore shika arimasen.
Ashley: "Sorry, this is all I have."
2. 屋台の人3: しょうがないなあ・・・。
Yatai no hito 3: Shōga nai n ...
Street vendor3: "Guess it can't be helped..."

Other Examples:

1. きれいだなあ。
Kirei da na .
"It's beautiful!"/"How beautiful!!"
2. 高いなあ。
Takai na .
"It's expensive!"/"How expensive!"

Vocab Usage: Welcome! and How about some ?

いらっしゃい [Irasshai!] "Welcome!"

Irasshai is a phrase that is short for irasshaimase (introduced in Lesson 10) and means "welcome" and is often said by store clerks when you enter a shop, restaurant or supermarket.

いかがですか。 [Ikaga desu ka?] "How is it?" "How about some ?"

Ikaga desu ka is a question used when selling something to draw attention to what you are selling. It is common to say the name of the product followed by ikaga desu ka, which is the equivalent of "How about some [product]?"

Cultural Insight

Yaki - An Important Word in Japanese Cuisine

Yaki (焼き) is a word that means "baked," "fried," or "grilled" in Japanese. In the dialogue of this lesson, Ashley tries a Japanese pastry called taiyaki (たい焼き), which is a fish-shaped pancake with a sweet bean-paste filling called an, or anko. While anko is the standard filling for taiyaki, there are also taiyaki that have different fillings, such as custard cream. Other Japanese food names that contain the word yaki include okonomiyaki (a pancake that contains vegetables and meat that was introduced in All About Japanese Lesson 7), yakisoba (fried noodles), yakitori (skewered grilled chicken), and teriyaki (a cooking method of marinating and then grilling or broiling meat).



Gengo Japanese S1

Take Charge of the Situation Using Your Japanese

23

| | |
|---------------------|----|
| Formal Kanji | 2 |
| Formal Kana | 2 |
| Formal Romanization | 3 |
| English | 3 |
| Vocabulary | 4 |
| Grammar Points | 5 |
| Cultural Insight | 10 |

Formal Kanji

(Rush hour)

アナウンス
アシュリー

次は、秋葉原。秋葉原。
すみません。降ります。すみません！

(Ashley manages to get off the train)

アシュリー

すみません。ここは、どこですか。

駅員

え？秋葉原駅の西口です。

アシュリー

ヨドバシカメラはどこですか。

駅員

中央改札口を出てください。

アシュリー

ちゅうおうかいさつぐち....は何ですか。

駅員

まっすぐ行ってください。あります。

アシュリー

あの、もう一度おねがいします。

駅員

仕方ないなあ。・・・じゃ、来てください。

(They walk to the Central Exit)

駅員

ここは、中央改札口です。

ここを出て、右に曲がってください。

それから、左に曲がってください。

アシュリー

右に曲がって、左に曲がる・・・

わかりました。本当にありがとうございました。

駅員

じゃ、気をつけて。

Formal Kana

(Rush hour)

アナウンス
アシュリー

つぎは、あきはばら。あきはばら。

すみません。おります。すみません！

(Ashley manages to get off the train)

アシュリー

すみません。ここは、どこですか。

えきいん

え？あきはばらえきのにしぐちです。

アシュリー

ヨドバシカメラはどこですか。

えきいん

ちゅうおうかいさつぐちをでてください。

アシュリー

ちゅうおうかいさつぐち....はなんですか。

えきいん

まっすぐいってください。あります。

アシュリー

あの、もういちどおねがいします。

えきいん

しかたないなあ。・・・じゃ、きてください。

(They walk to the Central Exit)

えきいん

ここは、ちゅうおうかいさつぐちです。

アシュリー

えきいん

ここをでて、みぎにまがってください。
 それから、ひだりにまがってください。
 みぎにまがって、ひだりにまがる・・・
 わかりました。ほんとうにありがとうございました。
 じゃ、きをつけて。

Formal Romanization

(Rush hour)

Anaunsu

Ashur

Ashur

Ekiin

Ashur

Ekiin

Ashur

Ekiin

Ashur

Ekiin

Ekiin

Ashur

Ekiin

Tsugi wa, Akihabara. Akihabara.
 Sumimasen. Orimasu. Sumimasen!
 (Ashley manages to get off the train)
 Sumimasen. Koko wa, doko desu ka.
 E? Akihabara eki no nishi-guchi desu.
 Yodobashikamera wa doko desu ka.
 Ch kaisatsu-guchi o dete kudasai.
 Ch kaisatsu-guchi.... wa nan desu ka.
 Massugu itte kudasai. Arimasu.
 Ano, m ichi-do onegai shimasu.
 Shikata nai n Ja, kite kudasai.
 (They walk to the Central Exit)
 Koko wa, ch kaisatsu-guchi desu.
 Koko o dete, migi ni magatte kudasai.
 Sore kara, hidari ni magatte kudasai.
 Migu ni magatte, hidari ni magaru...
 Wakarimashita. Hont ni arigat gozaimashita.
 Ja, ki o tsukete.

English

(Rush hour)

Train

Announcement

Ashley

Ashley

Station Attendant

Next is Akihabara...Akihabara...
 Excuse me. I'm getting off here. Excuse me!
 (Ashley manages to get off the train)
 Excuse me, where is this place?
 Huh? This is Akihabara Station's West Exit.

Ashley Where is Yodobashi camera?
 Station Attendant Go out the Chuo kaisatsu guchi.
 Ashley "Chuo kaisatsu guchi..." what's that?
 Station Attendant Go straight ahead, and it's there.
 Ashley Um, could you say that one more time?
 Station Attendant Guess I have no choice. (sigh) All right, come with me.
 (They walk to the Central Exit)
 Station Attendant This is the Central Exit.
 Go out here, and turn right.
 Then, turn left.
 Ashley Turn right, and then turn left...
 I see. Thank you very much.
 Station Attendant Take care.

Vocabulary

| Kanji | Kana | Romaji | English |
|-------|--------|----------------|---|
| 降りる | 降りる | oriru | to get off; V2 |
| 改札口 | かいさつぐち | kaisatsu-guchi | ticket entrance |
| まっすぐ | まっすぐ | massugu | straight ; Adj (na), Adv. |
| 来る | くる | kuru | to come; V3 |
| 曲がる | まがる | magaru | to turn; V1 |
| 気をつける | きをつける | ki o tsukeru | to be careful; V2 |
| 出る | でる | deru | to leave; V2 |
| 本当に | ほんとうに | hont ni | really, truly; Adv. |
| 右 | みぎ | migi | right hand side |
| 中央 | ちゅうおう | ch | center, middle |
| 西口 | にしぐち | nishi-guchi | west exit |
| 仕方ない | しかたない | shikata nai | it can't be helped, it's inevitable; Adj(i) |

Vocabulary Sample Sentences

秋葉原駅で、降りてください。
 改札口に来てください。
 まっすぐ行ってください。
 電車は何時に来ますか。
 左に曲がってください。

Please get off the train at Akihabara station.
 Please come to the ticket gate.
 Please go straight.
 What time will the train come?
 Please turn left.

普段から、食生活に気をつける。
 今、家を出ました。
 本当にありがとうございます。
 花屋の右に本屋があります。
 日本の中央銀行は日本銀行です。
 私は、今、西口にいます。
 仕方ないですね。

I always watch what I eat.
 I've just left my house.
 Thank you so much.
 There's a bookstore to the right of the florist.
 Japanese central bank is the bank of Japan.
 I'm at the west exit now.
 I guess I have no choice.

Grammar Points

Gengo Japanese Lesson #23 - Take Charge of the Situation Using Your Japanese

右に曲がって、左に曲がる...

Migi ni magatte, hidari ni magaru...

"Turn right, and then turn left..."

In this lesson, you will:

Learn how to make and use the te-form of verbs

Learn how to ask someone to do something using [te-form of verb] + kudasai (ください)

Learn useful phrases for giving directions

Learn how to use the set phrase ki o tsukete (気をつけて)

Te-form of Verbs

The te-form of verbs has many different uses in Japanese. In this lesson, we will focus on the te-form plus kudasai (ください), which enables us to make a polite request.

Class 1

We can sort class 1 verbs into several groups according to the final syllable of their dictionary forms.

Class 1 verbs that end in -ku, -gu ite, ide

| English | Dictionary Form | te-form |
|------------|-----------------|--------------|
| "to hear" | きく kiku | きいて kiite |
| "to hurry" | いそぐ | いそいで |
| | | |

| | | |
|---------------------|-----------|-------------|
| | isogu | isoide |
| *EXCEPTION!* | | |
| "to go" | いく iku | いって itte |

Class 1 verbs that end in -mu, -bu, -nu, nde

| English | Dictionary Form | te-form |
|------------|-----------------|----------------|
| "to drink" | のむ nomu | のんで nonde |
| "to play" | あそぶ asobu | あそんで asonde |
| "to die" | しぬ shinu | しんで shinde |

Class 1 verbs that end in -u, -tsu, -ru, tte

| English | Dictionary Form | te-form |
|-----------|-----------------|-----------------|
| "to buy" | かう kau | かって katte |
| "to wait" | まつ matsu | まって matte |
| "to turn" | まがる magaru | まがって magatte |

Class 1 verbs that end in -su shite

| English | Dictionary Form | te-form |
|------------|-----------------|-------------------|
| "to speak" | はなす hanasu | はなして hanashite |

Class 2

1. Omit the final -ru sound
2. Add -te

| English | Dictionary Form | te-form |
|-----------------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| "to open" | あける akeru | あけて akete |
| "to close" | しめる shimeru | しめて shimete |
| "to eat" | たべる taberu | たべて tabete |
| "to look, to see" | みる miru | みて mite |
| "to show" | みせる miseru | みせて misete |
| "to teach" | おしえる oshieru | おしえて oshiete |
| "to leave, to appear" | でる deru | でて dete |

Class 3

| English | Dictionary Form | te-form |
|-----------|-----------------|-------------|
| "to do" | する suru | して shite |
| "to come" | くる kuru | きて kite |

[Te-form of a Verb] + Kudasai (ください)

Now that we know how to make the te-form of a verb, we can use it to ask something to do something. By adding kudasai (ください) to the te-form of a verb, we create a command.

[te-form of a verb] + kudasai

| Verb (dictionary form) | Te-form of a verb | + kudasai | "Please ____" |
|------------------------|-------------------|---------------------|-----------------|
| いそぐ isogu | いそいで isoide | + ください + kudasai | "Please hurry." |
| まつ matsu | まって matte | + ください + kudasai | "Please wait." |
| 曲がる magaru | 曲がって magatte | + ください + kudasai | "Please turn." |
| 来る kuru | 来て kite | + ください + kudasai | "Please come." |

Examples From the Dialogue:

1. 駅員: 中央改札口を出てください。
Eki'in: Ch kaisatsu guchi o dete kudasai.
Station Attendant: "Go out the Central Exit."
2. 駅員: じゃ、来てください。
Eki'in: Ja, kite kudasai.
Station Attendant: "All right, come with me."

Useful Phrases for Giving Directions

In the dialogue, Ashley asked the station attendant for directions to Yodobashi Camera. Let's take a look at some expressions that we commonly use when giving directions. These are necessary if you ever plan to travel to Japan!

| | | |
|-------------|------------------|-------------------------|
| 左にまがる | hidari ni magaru | "to turn left" |
| 右にまがる | migi ni magaru | "to turn right" |
| まっすぐ(に)いく | massugu (ni) iku | "to go straight" |
| (place)を出る | (place) o deru | "to leave (a place)" |
| (place)で降りる | (place) de oriru | "to get off at (place)" |

Te-form commands:

| | | |
|------------|-------------------|------------------|
| 左にまがって | hidari ni magatte | "Turn left." |
| 右にまがって | migi ni magatte | "Turn right." |
| まっすぐ(に)行って | massugu (ni) itte | "Go straight." |
| (place)を出て | (place) o dete | "Leave (place)." |

| | | |
|-------------|------------------|-----------------------|
| (place)で降りて | (place) de orite | "Get off at (place)." |
|-------------|------------------|-----------------------|

Examples:

1. 駅員:ここを出て、右に曲がってください。
Eki'in: Koko o dete, migi ni magatte kudasai.
Station Attendant: "Go out here, and turn right."
2. 駅員:それから、左に曲がってください。
Eki'in: Sore kara, hidari ni magatte kudasai.
Station Attendant: "Then, turn left."
3. アシュリー:右に曲がって、左に曲がる・・・
Ashur : Migi ni magatte, hidari ni magaru...
Ashley: "Turn right, and then turn left..."

Using Ki o Tsukete (気をつけて)

Ki o tsukete (気をつけて) is a set phrase that we use to mean "take care" or "be careful." We often use it when we are seeing somebody off. In the dialogue, the station attendant says it to Ashley as she leaves. Adding kudasai (ください) to the end of this phrase makes it more polite: ki o tsukete kudasai (気をつけてください).

駅員:じゃ、気をつけて。
Eki'in: Ja, ki o tsukete.
Station Attendant: "Take care."

Vocabulary Building

Let's take a look at how to say cardinal directions in Japanese.

| Japanese | Romaji | English |
|----------|---------|---------|
| 北 | kita | "North" |
| 南 | minami | "South" |
| 西 | nishi | "West" |
| 東 | higashi | "East" |

We can combine these cardinal directions with the word guchi (口) meaning "exit," to specify certain exits. These words are often used at train stations.

| Japanese | Romaji | English |
|----------|------------|--------------|
| 北口 | kita-guchi | "North exit" |

| | | |
|----|---------------|--------------|
| 南口 | minami-guchi | "South exit" |
| 西口 | nishi-guchi | "West exit" |
| 東口 | higashi-guchi | "East exit" |
| 入口 | iriguchi | "entrance" |
| 出口 | deguchi | "exit" |

Cultural Insight

Rush Hour in Japan

In Tokyo and other major Japanese cities, public transport becomes very crowded during the rush hour. With most companies starting work at 9:00 AM and ending at 5:00 PM, rush hour is between roughly 7:45 to 8:45 AM and shortly after 5:00 PM on weekdays. If you ride the train during rush hour and have trouble getting off of the train at your stop, you can use the phrases Ashley used in the dialogue: sumimasen, orimasu (すみません、降ります), which means, "Excuse me, I'm getting off here." Even when it's not rush hour, some train lines in Japan can get quite crowded, so it's a good idea to keep these phrases in mind.



Gengo Japanese S1

Make the Most of Your Japanese Skills - Don't Miss Your Big Chance to
Start Speaking

24

| | |
|---------------------|---|
| Formal Kanji | 2 |
| Formal Kana | 2 |
| Formal Romanization | 3 |
| English | 4 |
| Vocabulary | 4 |
| Grammar Points | 5 |
| Cultural Insight | 9 |

Formal Kanji

アシュリー ここよく来る？
 豊田一郎 は？ああー！アシュリーさん！何してるの。
 アシュリー 買い物と観光をしています。
 豊田一郎さんは。
 豊田一郎 一郎と呼んでください。
 僕は仕事をしています。
 アキバの写真を撮っています。
 アシュリー ああ、仕事ですか。
 豊田一郎 で、日本はどうですか。
 アシュリー とても楽しいです。
 でも、とても暑いですね。
 豊田一郎 そうですね、むし暑いですね。(Cell phone rings)
 ちょっとすみません。
 ……はい、もしもし？うん。今、秋葉原にいる。
 写真を撮ってる。
 ……ええ？お客さん？待っている？
 ちょっと待って。今、すぐに帰る。(Hangs up)
 アシュリーさん、ごめんなさい。ゆっくり話したいけど……。
 アシュリーさん、明日の夜、時間ある？
 アシュリー あ、明日から、日光に行きます。
 でも、週末は暇です。
 豊田一郎 じゃ、メールして。じゃ。

Formal Kana

アシュリー ここよくくる？
 とよたいちろう は？ああー！アシュリーさん！なにしてるの。
 アシュリー かいものとかんこうをしています。
 とよたいちろうさんは。
 とよたいちろう いちろうとよんでください。
 ぼくはしごとをしています。
 アキバのしゃしんをとっています。
 アシュリー ああ、しごとですか。
 とよだいちろう で、にほんはどうですか。
 アシュリー とてもたのしいです。
 でも、とてもあついですね。

とよたいちろう そうですね、むしあついですね。(Cell phone rings)
 ちょっとすみません。・・・はい、もしもし？
 うん。いま、あきはばらにいる。
 しゃしんをとってる。
 ・・・ええ？おきゃくさん？まっている？
 ちょっとまって。いま、すぐにかえる。(Hangs up)
 アシュリーさん、ごめんなさい。ゆっくりはなしたいけど・・・
 。
 アシュリーさん、あしたのよる、じかんある？
 アシュリー あ、あしたから、にっこうにいきます。
 でも、しゅうまつはひまです。
 とよたいちろう じゃ、メールして。じゃ。

Formal Romanization

Ashur Koko yoku kuru?
 Toyota Ichir Ha? ! Ashur -san! Nani shite ru no.
 Ashur Kaimono to kank o shite imasu.
 Toyota Ichir -san wa.
 Toyota Ichir Ichir to yonde kudasai.
 Boku wa shigoto o shite imasu.
 Akiba no shashin o totte imasu.
 Ashur , shigoto desu ka.
 Toyota Ichir De, Nihon wa d desu ka.
 Ashur Totemo tanoshii desu.
 Demo, totemo atsui desu ne.
 Toyota Ichir S desu ne, mushiatsui desu ne. (Cell phone rings)
 Chotto sumimasen
 Hai moshimoshi? Un. Ima, Akihabara ni iru. Shashin o totte ru.
 ? O-kyaku-san? Matte iru?
 Chotto matte. Ima, sugu ni kaeru.(Hangs up)
 Ashur -san, gomen nasai. Yukkuri hanashitai kedo....
 Ashur -san, ashita no yoru, jikan aru?
 Ashur A, ashita kara, Nikk ni ikimasu.
 Demo, sh matsu wa hima desu.
 Toyota Ichir Ja, m ru shite. Ja.

English

Ashley Do you come here often?
 Ichiro Toyota Huh? Ohh! Ashley-san! What are you doing?
 Ashley I'm shopping and sightseeing.
 How about you, Ichiro Toyota?
 Ichiro Toyota Please, call me Ichiro.
 I'm working.
 I'm taking pictures of Akihabara.
 Ashley Oh, work?
 Ichiro Toyota So, how's Japan?
 Ashley It's a lot of fun!
 But it's really hot, isn't it?
 Ichiro Toyota Yes it is,
 it's really humid. (cell phone rings)
 Excuse me for a moment.
 ...Hello? Yeah. I'm in Akihabara right now.
 I'm taking pictures...
 huh? A customer? Is waiting?
 Okay, hold on. I'm leaving now. (Hangs up)
 Ashley-san, I'm really sorry. I'd like to stay and chat but...
 do you have time tomorrow evening?
 Ashley Oh, tomorrow I'm going to Nikko.
 But I'm free on the weekend.
 Ichiro Toyota Okay well, e-mail me! See ya.

Vocabulary

| Kanji | Kana | Romaji | English |
|-------|-------|------------|-------------------------------|
| 買い物 | かいもの | kaimono | shopping |
| 呼ぶ | よぶ | yobu | to call |
| 写真 | しゃしん | shashin | photograph |
| とる | とる | toru | to take (a photo); V1 |
| 待つ | まつ | matsu | to wait; V1 |
| ゆっくり | ゆっくり | yukkuri | at leisure, at one's own pace |
| むし暑い | むしあつい | mushiatsui | humid, muggy ; Adj (i) |
| 社長 | しゃちょう | shach | boss, company president |

| | | | |
|---------|---------|--------------|--------------------------------|
| すぐに | すぐに | sugu ni | immediately, instantly; Adv |
| 帰る | かえる | kaeru | to return, to go home; V1 |
| ごめんなさい。 | ごめんなさい。 | Gomen nasai. | I'm sorry. (apology) |
| 話す | はなす | hanasu | to talk, to speak ; V1 |
| 週末 | しゅうまつ | sh matsu | weekend |
| メール | メール | m ru | e-mail |

Vocabulary Sample Sentences

私は買い物大好きです。
 ジョナサンと呼んでください。
 これは、私の子供の写真です。
 写真を撮ってください。
 ちょっと待ってください。
 ゆっくり、ジョンさんと話したいです。
 八月はむし暑い。
 わたしは社長です。
 すぐに来てください。
 アメリカに帰りたいです。
 本当にごめんなさい。
 すみません、ゆっくり話してください。
 この週末、暇ですか。
 あとで、メールします。

I like shopping very much.
 Please call me Jonathan.
 This is a picture of my child.
 Please take a picture.
 Please wait a minute.
 I want to talk at leisure with John.
 It's humid in August.
 I'm a (company) president.
 Please come right away.
 I want to go back to the U.S.
 I'm really sorry.
 Excuse me, but please speak slowly.
 Are you free this weekend?
 I'll e-mail you later.

Grammar Points

Gengo Japanese Lesson #24 - Make the Most of Your Japanese Skills - Don't Miss Your Big Chance to Start Speaking

僕は仕事をしています。アキバの写真をとっています。

Boku wa shigoto o shite imasu. Akiba no shashin o totte imasu.

"I'm working. I'm taking pictures of Akihabara."

In this lesson, you will:

Learn about te iru (ている) to talk about on-going actions and states

Learn how to use the phrase to yonde kudasai (とよんでください)

Te-form of a Verb Plus Iru/Imasu

In this lesson, we are focusing on using [te-form of a verb] + [iru/imasu]. This construction can express two meanings but we will be focusing on only one of them. [Te-form of a verb] + [iru/imasu] represents a present progressive action (like -ing in English).

To make this construction, we put the verb in the te-form and add iru (いる) or imasu (います).

[verb te-form + iru/imasu]

| English | Dictionary and te-form | te-form + iru (informal) | te-form + imasu (formal) | Present Progressive |
|------------|---------------------------|--------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------|
| "to use" | 使う tsukau | 使っている tsukatte iru | 使っています tsukatte imasu | "am using" |
| "to swim" | 泳ぐ oyogu | 泳いでいる oyoide iru | 泳んでいます oyoide imasu | "am swimming" |
| "to speak" | 話す hanasu hanashite | 話している hanashite iru | 話しています hanashite imasu | "am speaking" |
| "to drink" | 飲む nomu | 飲んでいる nomonde iru | 飲んでます nonde imasu | "am drinking" |
| "to look" | 見る miru | 見ている mite iru | 見えます mite imasu | "am looking" |
| "to eat" | 食べる taberu | 食べている tabete iru | 食べてます tabete imasu | "am eating" |
| "to do" | する suru | している shite iru | しています shite imasu | "am doing" |

Note that in casual speech, the first "i" in iru or imasu can be omitted. We saw this in the

dialogue when Ichiro says: "Shashin o totte ru." Normally it would be "Shashin o totte iru", but the "i" is omitted.

Let's take a look at different sentences that use the te-form:

| | Informal | Formal |
|--|---|--|
| Non-past Affirmative ("Ichiro takes pictures") | 一郎は写真をとる。 Ichir wa shashin o toru. | 一郎は写真をとります。 Ichir wa shashin o torimasu. |
| Present Progressive ("Ichiro is taking pictures") | 一郎は写真をとっている Ichir wa shashin o totte iru. | 一郎は写真をとっています Ichir wa shashin o totte imasu. |
| Question ("Is Ichiro taking pictures?") | 一郎は写真をとっている？ Ichir wa shashin o totte iru? | 一郎は写真をとっていますか？ Ichir wa shashin o totte imasu ka? |
| Question ("what") ("What is Ichiro taking pictures of?") | 一郎は何をとっている？ Ichir wa nani o totte iru? | 一郎は何をとっていますか？ Ichir wa nani o totte imasu ka? |
| Question ("what") ("What is Ichiro doing?") | 一郎は何をしている？ Ichir wa nani o shite iru? | 一郎は何をしていますか。 Ichir wa nani o shite imasu ka? |

Examples from the Dialog:

1. 豊田一郎: 僕は仕事をしています。アキバの写真をとっています。
Toyota Ichir : Boku wa shigoto o shite imasu. Akiba no shashin o totte imasu.
Ichiro Toyota: "I'm working. I'm taking pictures of Akihabara."
2. 豊田一郎: 今、秋葉原にいる。写真をとってる。
Toyota Ichir : Ima, Akihabara ni iru. Shashin o totteru.
Ichiro Toyota: "Yeah. I'm in Akihabara right now. I'm taking pictures."

Other Examples:

1. 私は日本語を勉強しています。

Watashi wa Nihon-go o benkyō shite imasu.

"I'm studying Japanese."

- 彼女は浴衣を着ています。

Kanojo wa yukata o kite imasu.

"She is wearing a yukata."

Please, Call Me _

If you have a nickname or a name that you prefer to go by, you can let people know by using the phrase [preferred name] to yonde kudasai (~ とよんでください). To (と) is a particle we use for quotes.

[Preferred Name] to yonde kudasai.

Example from the Dialogue:

豊田一郎: 一郎とよんでください。

Toyota Ichir : Ichir to yonde kudasai.

Ichiro Toyota: "Please call me Ichiro."

Other Examples:

1. ぼくはトーマス・ブラウンです。トムとよんでください。

Boku wa T masu Buraun desu. Tomu to yonde kudasai.

"I'm Thomas Brown. Please call me Tom."

2. 私はジェシカです。ジェシーとよんでください。

Watashi wa Jeshika desu. Jesh to yonde kudasai.

"I'm Jessica. Please call me Jessi."

Cultural Insight

Akihabara (秋葉原)

In this dialogue, Ashley visited Akihabara, a district in central Tokyo that is now renowned as a major shopping district for electronics and computer goods. In recent years, it has become home to the unique anime/manga/gaming subculture. Many of the shops in Akihabara cater toward otaku, a word that refers to people who are into something - particularly anime, manga, and video games - to an obsessive degree. While the word is mainly used to refer to people with these kinds of interests, it can be applied to other interests as well (soccer otaku, train otaku, etc.). We often shorten the name Akihabara to Akiba in Japan.



Gengo Japanese S1

The Right Way to Do a Home Stay - Japanese Manner and Etiquette

25

| | |
|---------------------|----|
| Formal Kanji | 2 |
| Formal Kana | 2 |
| Formal Romanization | 3 |
| English | 4 |
| Vocabulary | 5 |
| Grammar Points | 7 |
| Cultural Insight | 11 |

Formal Kanji

(日光駅)
 光岡(母) 失礼ですが、アシュリーさんですか。
 アシュリー はい、アシュリーです。
 光岡(母) はじめまして。光岡れいの母です。
 あなた、あなた！
 アシュリーさんいましたよ。
 光岡(父) アシュリーさん、日光へようこそ。
 れいの父です。
 れいがお世話になっています。
 さあ、家でお昼ご飯を食べましょう。
 車に乗ってください。

(光岡さんの家)
 光岡(母) さあ、どうぞ。
 靴をぬいで、あがってください。
 せまいところですけど....
 アシュリー お邪魔します。(achoo)
 光岡(父) さあ、入って、荷物を置いて。
 遠慮しないでくださいね。
 アシュリー すみません。お世話になります。
 きれいなお部屋ですね。
 あ、これは、ご家族の写真ですか。(achoo)
 お父さんと、お母さんと、れいさんと、れいさんの弟さんですね。
 。

光岡(父) そう。それから、ニャンタ。猫です。
 猫 (meow)
 アシュリー (achoo)
 光岡(母) アシュリーさん、猫アレルギー？
 アシュリー はい。猫にアレルギーがあります。
 でも、心配しないでください。(achoo)
 大丈夫です。

Formal Kana

(にっこうえき)
 みつおか(はは) しつれいですが、アシュリーさんですか。
 アシュリー はい、アシュリーです。

- みつおか(はは) はじめまして。みつおかれいのははです。
あなた、あなた！
アシュリーさんいましたよ。
- みつおか(ちち) アシュリーさん、にっこうへようこそ。
れいのちちです。
れいがお世話になっています。
さあ、いえでおひるごはんをたべましょう。
くるまにのってください。
- (みつおかさんのうち)
- みつおか(はは) さあ、どうぞ。
くつをぬいで、あがってください。
せまいところですけど...。
- アシュリー おじゃまします。(achoo)
- みつおか(ちち) さあ、はいって、にもつをおいて。
えんりよしないでくださいね。
- アシュリー すみません。お世話になります。
きれいなおへやですね。あ、これは、ごかぞくのしゃしんですか。
(achoo)
おとうさんと、おかあさんと、れいさんと、れいさんのおとうと
さんですね。
- みつおか(ちち) そう。それから、ニャンタ。ねこです。
ねこ
- アシュリー (achoo)
- みつおか(はは) アシュリーさん、ねこアレルギー？
- アシュリー はい。ねこにアレルギーがあります。
でも。しんぱいしないでください。(achoo)
だいじょうぶです。

Formal Romanization

- (Nikk eki)
- Mitsuoka(haha) Shitsurei desu ga, Ashur -san desu ka.
- Ashur Hai, Ashur desu.
- Mitsuoka(haha) Hajimemashite. Mitsuoka Rei no haha desu.
Anata, anata!
Ashur -san imashita yo.
- Mitsuoka(chichi) Ashur -san, Nikk e y koso.
Rei no chichi desu.
Rei ga o-sewa ni natte imasu.

S , ie de o-hiru go-han o tabemash .
Kuruma ni notte kudasai.

(Mitsuoka no uchi)
Mitsuoka(haha) S , d zo.
Kutsu o nuide, agatte kudasai.
Semai tokoro desu kedo....

Ashur O-jama shimasu.(achoo)
Mitsuoka(chichi) S , haitte, nimotsu o oite.
Enryo shinaide kudasai ne.

Ashur Sumimasen. O-sewa ni narimasu.
Kirei na o-heya desu ne.
A, kore wa, go-kazoku no shashin desu ka.(achoo)
O-t -san to, o-k -san to, Rei-san to, Rei-san no ot to-san desu
ne.

Mitsuoka(chichi) S . Sore kara, Nyanta. Neko desu.
neko (meow)
Ashur (achoo)
Mitsuoka(haha) Ashur -san, neko arerug ?
Ashur Hai. Neko ni arerug ga arimasu.
Demo. Shinpai shinaide kudasai.(achoo)
Daij bu desu.

English

(At Nikko Station)
Mrs. Mitsuoka Excuse me for asking, but are you Ashley?
Ashley Yes, I'm Ashley.
Mrs. Mitsuoka Nice to meet you. I'm Rei Mitsuoka's mother.
Honey, honey!
Ashley's over here!

Mr. Mitsuoka Ashley, welcome to Nikko!
I'm Rei's father.
Thank you for always helping Rei out.
Well, let's go have lunch at home.
Please get in the car.

(the Mitsuokas' house)
Mrs. Mitsuoka Come on in!
Please take off your shoes and come in.
Our house is very small...

Ashley Please excuse the intrusion. (achoo)
 Mr. Mitsuoka Come in and put your stuff down. Please don't hesitate.
 Ashley Thank you for your kindness.
 This is a beautiful room!
 Oh, is this a picture of the family? (achoo)
 It's Father, Mother, Rei-san, and Rei's little brother, right?
 Mr. Mitsuoka Yup. And this is Nyanta, the cat.
 Cat (meow)
 Ashley (achoo)
 Mrs. Mitsuoka Ashley, are you allergic to cats?
 Ashley Yes, I'm allergic to cats.
 But, please don't worry about me. (achoo)
 I'm fine.

Vocabulary

| Kanji | Kana | Romaji | English |
|--------|--------|----------------|--|
| いつも | いつも | itsumo | always, usually |
| 車 | くるま | kuruma | car |
| 乗る | のる | noru | to ride, to take, to get on; V1 |
| 靴 | くつ | kutsu | shoes |
| あなた | あなた | anata | you, honey(from wife to husband) |
| お世話になる | お世話になる | o-sewa ni naru | to be taken care of; V1 |
| 昼ごはん | ひるごはん | hiru go-han | lunch |
| ぬぐ | ぬぐ | nugu | to take off; V1 |
| せまい | せまい | semai | narrow, small; Adj(i) |
| ところ | ところ | tokoro | place |
| 置く | おく | oku | to put, to place, to leave(behind); V1 |
| 遠慮する | えんりょする | enryo suru | to hesitate, to be humble; V3 |
| 心配する | しんぱいする | shinpai suru | to worry; V3 |
| 失礼 | しつれい | shitsurei | rude, impoliteness; Adv, noun |
| 父 | ちち | chichi | father |
| 荷物 | にもつ | nimotsu | luggage, baggage |
| 家族 | かぞく | kazoku | family |

| | | | |
|-------|-------|----------|----------------------------|
| 母 | はは | haha | mother |
| 入る | はいる | hairu | get into, enter, join ; V1 |
| お父さん | おとうさん | o-t -san | father |
| お母さん | おかあさん | o-k -san | mother |
| 弟 | おとうと | ot to | younger brother |
| 猫 | ねこ | neko | cat |
| アレルギー | アレルギー | arerug | allergy |
| さあ | さあ | s | come on |

Vocabulary Sample Sentences

シンガポールは、いつも暑いです。
 これは日本の車です。
 私は、バスに乗りました。
 これはイタリアの靴です。
 これはあなたのですか。
 お世話になりました。
 あそこで、お昼ごはんを食べませんか。
 靴をぬいでください。
 私の部屋はせまいです。
 ディズニーランドは楽しいところです。
 そこに荷物を置いてください。
 遠慮しないで。
 心配しないで。
 失礼な人は好きじゃないです。
 これは、うちの父です。
 荷物、いくつありますか。
 これは、私の家族の写真です。
 これは、うちの母です。
 先週、この会社に入りました。
 お父さんはお元気ですか。
 お母さんはお元気ですか。
 私の弟はジャーナリストです。
 テーブルの下に猫がいます。
 アレルギーがあります。
 さあ、行きましょう。

It's always hot in Singapore.
 This is a Japanese car.
 I took a bus.
 These are Italian shoes.
 Is this yours?
 Thank you for your kindness.
 Why don't we have lunch there.
 Please take off your shoes.
 My room is small.
 Disneyland is a fun place.
 Please put your luggage there.
 Don't hesitate.
 Don't worry.
 I don't like rude people.
 This is my father.
 How many pieces of luggage do you have?
 This is a photo of my family.
 This is my mother.
 I joined this company last week.
 How's your father?
 How's your mother?
 My younger brother is a journalist.
 There is a cat under the table.
 I have allergies.
 Come on, let's go!

Grammar Points

Gengo Japanese Lesson #25 - The Right Way to Do a Home Stay - Japanese Manner and Etiquette

さあ、どうぞ。靴をぬいで、あがってください。せまいところですけど....。

S , d zo. Kutsu o nuide, agatte kudasai. Semai tokoro desu kedo...

"Come on in! Please take off your shoes and come in. Our house is very small..."

In this lesson, you will:

Learn how to tell someone not to do something with -nai de kudasai(ないでください)

Learn useful phrases for visiting a Japanese home

Learn the meaning of the expression o-sew~~ai~~ai narimasu (お世話になります)

Telling Someone Not to Do Something

To tell someone not to do something, we put the verb into the informal negative form and then add de kudasai (でください). We went over how to create the negative form in Lesson 18 and 19. Let's quickly review how to make this negative form:

Class 1 verbs (-u verbs)

1. Drop the final -u sound
2. Add -a nai

| English | Dictionary Form | Plain Negative Form |
|------------|-----------------|---------------------|
| "to run" | 走る hashiru | 走らない hashiranai |
| "to go" | 行く iku | 行かない ikanai |
| "to speak" | 話す hanasu | 話さない hanasanai |
| "to buy" | 買う kau | 買わない kawanai * |

* For the class 1 verbs that have dictionary forms ending in hiragana u (う), we add -wanai

(わない) instead of anai (あない).

Class 2 verbs (-ru verbs)

1. Drop the final ru sound
2. Add nai

| English | Dictionary Form | Plain Negative Form |
|----------|-----------------|---------------------|
| "to eat" | 食べる taberu | 食べない tabenai |
| "to see" | 見る miru | 見ない minai |

Class 3 verbs (Irregular verbs)

Remember that the two irregular verbs don't follow any pattern and so their different forms must be memorized.

| English | Dictionary Form | Plain Negative Form |
|-----------|-----------------|---------------------|
| "to do" | する suru | しない shinai |
| "to come" | 来る kuru | 来ない konai |

Adding de (で) to the negative form of the verb creates an informal command

[informal negative form of verb] + de = "Do not [verb]"

Adding -de kudasai (ください) to the negative form of the verb creates a formal command:

[informal negative form of verb] + de kudasai = "Please do not [verb]"

| Dictionary Form | Informal Negative | + de (kudasai) | Translation |
|-----------------|-------------------|----------------|------------------|
| 行く [iku] | 行かない | 行かないで (ください) | "(Please) do not |
| | | | |

| | | | |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------|--|-------------------------------|
| "to go" | ikanai | ikanai de (kudasai) | go" |
| 見る [miru] "to see" | 見ない minai | 見ないで (ください) minai de (kudasai) | "(Please) do not look" |
| 遠慮する [enryo suru] "to hesitate" | 遠慮しない enryo shinai | 遠慮しないで (ください) enryo shinai de kudasai | "(Please) do not hesitate" |

Examples from the Dialogue:

1. 光岡 (父): さあ、入って、荷物を置いて。遠慮しないでくださいね。
Mitsuoka (chichi): S , haitte, nimotsu o oite. Enryo shinai de kudasai ne.
Mr. Mitsuoka: "Come in and put your stuff down. Please don't hesitate."
2. アシュリー: 心配しないでください。
Ashur : Shinpai shinai de kudasai.
Ashley: "Please don't worry about me."

Other Examples:

1. 走らないでください。
Hashiranai de kudasai.
"Please don't run."
2. あの部屋に入らないでください。
Ano heya ni hairanaide kudasai.
"Please don't go into that room."

Phrases for Visiting a Japanese Home

In this dialogue, Ashley visits the home of Rei Mitsuoka's parents for the first time. Let's take a look at some phrases we heard being used:

| | Translation | Explanation |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------|--|
| お邪魔します O-jama shimasu | "Please excuse my intrusion." | Used when you enter somebody's home. |
| あがってください Agatte kudasai | "Please come in." | Used when inviting someone into your house. Agaru (あがる) literally means to "come up" and is used |
| | | |

| | | |
|--|--|---|
| | | because when you enter a Japanese house, you step up into the house from the genkan ("entrance"), which is lowered. |
|--|--|---|

The Expression O-sewa ni naru (お世話になる)

The word sewa (世話) means "care" or "favor" and the phrase o-sewa ni naru (お世話になる) we can translate as "to be taken care of" or "to rely on."

お世話になります [O-sewa ni narimasu]

You use this phrase towards someone who is going to be assisting you or taking care of you in some way. In the dialogue, Ashley uses it to show her appreciation towards Rei Mitsuoka's parents because they are letting her stay with them.

お世話になっています [O-sewa ni natte imasu]

This phrase is commonly used in a formal greeting or introduction, especially in business situations when greeting someone who works closely with your company. Outside of a business situation, when you are introduced to a person who knows one of your family members, the name of the [family member] + [ga] precedes o-sewa ni natte imasu. This is the situation when Rei's father uses it towards Ashley when talking about his daughter.

お世話になりました [O-sewa ni narimashita]

This phrase has a variety of meanings depending on the situation. We often use it in a farewell situation, where it implies that the listener has done something for or has helped the speaker in some way, and therefore roughly translates to "thanks for everything" or "thank you for your kindness/hospitality."

Vocab Usage: ga/kedo

ga/kedo - We mentioned that the word demo (でも) means "but". This word usually comes at the beginning of a sentence. In the dialogue we also saw another word, kedo (けど), which means "but" or "however" and comes at the end of a sentence or phrase. When it comes at the end of a sentence it means that the sentence is incomplete and trails off and the listener is expected to understand what's inferred. The word kedo (けど) is short for keredomo

(けれども), and the word ga (が) also has the same meaning of "but, however" and is used in the same way.

Example from the Dialogue:

光岡(母):せまいところです **けど**....

Mitsuoka(haha):Semai tokoro desu **kedo**....

Mrs. Mitsuoka: Our house is very small, **but...** (please make yourself at home)

Other Examples:

すみません **が**....

Sumimasen **ga**....

Excuse me **but...**

つまらないものです **が**....

Tsumaranai mono desu **ga**...

It's nothing special **but**....(I hope you like it.)

In the Appendix

In this lesson, we saw a lot of vocabulary related to family:

母 - haha - (one's own) mother

父 - chichi - (one's own) father

お母さん - o-k -san - (someone else's) mother

お父さん - o-t -san - (someone else's) father

For more detailed information on family-related vocabulary, please check the following Appendix lesson: Family Members (Appendix #12)

Cultural Insight

Using anata

When starting out learning Japanese, we learn that the word for "you" is anata (あなた).

While this is technically true, the word anata cannot be considered the exact equivalent of

"you" in English. While the word "you" can be used toward anyone in English, in Japanese you should only use anata with strangers whose name you don't know, as it has the potential to sound a little cold and distant. In Japanese, it is much more common to address someone by their name rather than with "you," so if you know someone's name, you should address them that way. One important thing to note, however, is how wives use anata to address their husbands. Wives use anata toward their husbands in the same way that a wife might use "honey" or "darling" toward her husband in English.



Gengo Japanese S1

The Best Japanese Dish You'll Ever Have

26

| | |
|---------------------|----|
| Formal Kanji | 2 |
| Formal Kana | 2 |
| Formal Romanization | 3 |
| English | 3 |
| Vocabulary | 4 |
| Grammar Points | 5 |
| Cultural Insight | 10 |

Formal Kanji

- 光岡（母） アシュリーさん、嫌いなものはありますか。
アシュリー 特に何もありません。
何でも食べます。
光岡（母） それはよかった。
- 光岡（母） 何もありませんが、どうぞ。
アシュリー あ、おそばですね。私、大好きです。
いただきます。(eats soba)
おいしい！とってもおいしいです。
光岡（父） これもどうぞ。ゆばです。
日光のゆばは有名ですよ。
それから、これは、こんにゃくです。
アシュリー うーん。どれもおいしいですね。
でも、ゆばは・・・何ですか。
光岡（母） 豆腐の兄弟ですね。
健康的な食べ物ですよ。
光岡（父） 日光のどこに行きたいですか。
アシュリー 東照宮と華厳の滝が見たいです。
それから、中禅寺湖で散歩をしてボートに乗りたいです。
光岡（父） たくさんありますね。
じゃ、早く食べて、行きましょう。

Formal Kana

- みつおか(はは) アシュリーさん、きらいなものはありますか。
アシュリー とくになにもありません。
なんでもたべます。
みつおか(はは) それはよかった。
- みつおか(はは) なにもありませんが、どうぞ。
アシュリー あ、おそばですね。わたし、だいすきです。
いただきます。(eats soba)おいしい！
とってもおいしいです。
みつおか(ちち) これもどうぞ。ゆばです。
にっこうのゆばはゆうめいですよ。
それから、これは、こんにゃくです。

アシュリー うーん。どれもおいしいですね。
でも、ゆばは・・・なんですか。
みつおか(はは) どうふのきょうだいですね。
けんこうてきなたべものですよ。
みつおか(ちち) につこうのどこにいきたいですか。
アシュリー とうしょうぐうとけごんのたきがみたいです。
それから、ちゅうぜんじこでさんぽをしてポートにのりたいたです。
みつおか(ちち) たくさんありますね。
じゃ、はやくたべて、いきましょう。

Formal Romanization

Mitsuoka(haha) Ashur -san, kirai na mono wa arimasu ka.
ashur Toku ni nani mo nai desu.
Nan demo tabemasu.
Mitsuoka(haha) Sore wa yokatta.

Mitsuoka(haha) Nani mo arimasen ga, d zo.
ashur A, o-soba desu ne. Watashi, daisuki desu.
Itadakimasu.(eats soba)
Oishii! Tottemo oishii desu.
Mitsuoka(chichi) Kore mo d zo. Yuba desu.
ashur Nikk no yuba wa y mei desu yo.
Sore kara, kore wa, kon'nyaku desu.
n. Dore mo oishii desu ne.
Demo, yuba wa... nan desu ka.
Mitsuoka(haha) T fu no ky dai desu ne.
Kenk -teki na tabemono desu yo.
Mitsuoka(chichi) Nikk no doko ni ikitai desu ka.
ashur T sh g to Kegon no Taki ga mitai desu.
Sore kara, Ch zenji-ko de sanpo o shite b to ni noritai desu.
Mitsuoka(chichi) Takusan arimasu ne.
Ja, hayaku tabete, ikimash .

English

Mrs. Mitsuoka Ashley Ashley, are there any foods you don't like?
 Ashley Not really.
 I'll eat anything.
 Mrs. Mitsuoka Oh, that's good.

Mrs. Mitsuoka It's not much, but here you are.
 Ashley Oh, it's soba, isn't it? I love soba!
 Itadakimasu. (eats soba)
 Yum! It's really good!

Mr. Mitsuoka Try some of this, too. It's yuba.
 Yuba from Nikko is famous.
 And also, this is kon'nyaku.

Ashley Mmm, they're all good!
 But...what's yuba?

Mrs. Mitsuoka It's like a cousin of tofu.
 It's a very healthy food.

Mr. Mitsuoka Where do you want to go in Nikko?
 Ashley I want to see Tosh g and Kegon no Taki.
 And I also want to take a walk around Ch zenjiko and ride in a boat.

Mr. Mitsuoka That's quite a lot.
 Well then, let's eat quickly and go!

Vocabulary

| Kanji | Kana | Romaji | English |
|-------|--------|------------|--------------------------------|
| 特に | とくに | toku ni | especially |
| 早く | はやく | hayaku | fast, quickly, soon |
| とっても | とっても | tottemo | very, awfully |
| こんにゃく | こんにゃく | kon'nyaku | konnyaku, devil's tongue |
| 健康的 | けんこうてき | kenk -teki | healthy; Adj(na) |
| 嫌い | きらい | kirai | dislikable, hate ; Adj(na) |
| 有名 | ゆうめい | y mei | famous ; Adj(na) |
| 豆腐 | とうふ | t fu | tofu, bean-curd |
| 兄弟 | きょうだい | ky dai | siblings, brothers and sisters |
| 食べ物 | たべもの | tabemono | food |

| | | | |
|------|------|---------|--------------------------------|
| たくさん | たくさん | takusan | a lot, many, much |
| ボート | ボート | b to | boat |
| 散歩 | さんぽ | sanpo | walk, stroll |
| 見る | みる | miru | to see, to watch, to look ; V2 |

Vocabulary Sample Sentences

特に日本のマヨネーズが好きです。

早く家に帰りたいです。

とっても楽しかったです。

こんにゃくは健康的な食べ物です。

健康的なものを食べたい。

私は好き嫌いがありません。

Ryo Ishikawa は有名なプロゴルファーです。

どこでその豆腐を買いましたか。

兄弟がいますか。

嫌いな食べ物は何ですか。

水をたくさん飲んでください。

公園でボートに乗りませんか。

よく、散歩します。

電車の中から富士山を見ました。

I especially like Japanese mayonnaise.

I want to go home soon.

It was so much fun.

Konnyaku is a healthy food.

I want to eat healthy.

I'm not picky.

Ryo Ishikawa is a famous golfer.

Where did you get that tofu?

Do you have any brothers or sisters?

What food do you hate?

Please drink a lot of water.

Would you like to ride a boat in the park?

I often take walks.

I saw Mt. Fuji from the train.

Grammar Points

Gengo Japanese Lesson #26 - The Best Japanese Dish You'll Ever Have

じゃ、早く食べて、行きましょう。

Ja, hayaku tabete, ikimash .

"Well then, let's eat quickly and go!"

In this lesson, you will:

Learn how to use nani mo (何も) and nan demo (何でも)

Learn how to combine two verbs using the te-form

Learn how to create adverbs

Nani mo (何も) and nan demo (何でも)

In the dialogue, we saw the question word nan/nani (何) followed by the particles mo (も) and demo (でも) to create the words nani mo (何も) and nan demo (何でも). Let's check the meanings of these words and look at other words we can create using these same patterns.

When we attach the particle mo (も) to question words such as nani (何), dare (誰), or doko (どこ), and we use it in a negative statement, we can translate [question word] + mo as "not any...."

[Question word] + mo + [negative statement] = "not any ____"

| Question Word | Question Word + mo (も) | English |
|---------------|------------------------|--|
| 何 nani | 何も nani mo | nothing |
| どこ doko | どこも doko mo | -nowhere (in negative sentence) -everywhere (in affirmative sentence) |
| 誰 dare | 誰も dare mo | -no one (in negative sentence) -everyone (in affirmative sentence) |
| どれ dore | どれも dore mo | -none (in negative sentence) -everything (in affirmative sentence) |

Examples From the Dialogue:

1. アシュリー:(嫌いな食べ物は) 特に何もありません。
Ashur : (Kirai na tabemono wa) toku ni nani mo nai desu.
Ashley: (literally) "There's nothing I don't like."
2. アシュリー:うーん。どれもおいしいですね。
Ashur : n. Dore mo oishii desu ne.
Ashley: "Mmm, they're all good!"

A question word followed by demo(でも) means "any."

[Question word] + demo = "any ~"

| Question Word | Question Word + demo(でも) | English |
|---------------|--------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 何 nan | 何でも nan demo | anything, no matter what it is |
| いつ itsu | いつでも itsu demo | anytime, no matter when it is |
| どこ doko | どこでも doko demo | anywhere, no matter where it is |
| 誰 dare | 誰でも dare demo | anyone, no matter who it is |
| どれ dore | どれでも dore demo | no matter which it is |

Example From the Dialogue:

アシュリー: 何でも食べます。

Ashur : Nan demo tabemasu.

Ashley: "I'll eat anything."

Another Example:

いつでも来てください。

Itsu demo kite kudasai.

"Please come anytime."

Now let's compare the following sentences:

私は、何でも食べます。

私は何も、食べません。

Watashi wa nan demo tabemasu.

Watashi wa nani mo tabemasen.

"I'll eat anything."

"I won't eat anything."

Combining Two Verbs Using the Te-form

In this lesson, you will learn how to combine two or more verbs. To express a succession of actions or events, you must change all verbs except the final one into the te-form. In this case, it is similar to using "and" in English to join multiple verbs ("eat and drink," "run and

jump").

[te-form of a verb of first action] + [verb of second action]

| First Action | Second Action | Combined with te-form |
|--|---------------------------------------|---|
| ランチを買う ranchi o kau "buy lunch" | 食べる taberu "eat" | ランチを 買って 食べる ranchi o katte taberu "buy lunch and eat it" |
| お風呂に入る o-furo ni hairu "take a bath" | 寝る neru "sleep" | お風呂に 入って 寝る o-furo ni haitte neru "take a bath and go to sleep" |
| 帰る kaeru "go home" | テレビを見る terebi o miru "watch TV" | 帰って テレビを見る kaette terebi o miru "go home and watch TV" |

The tense of the final verb determines the tense of the whole sentence. For example, if the final verb is in the past tense, then all of the actions mentioned took place in succession in the past. If the final verb is in the present/future tense, all of the actions mentioned will take place in the present or future. We can even use the verbs expressing desire as well as volitional verbs, as we see in the example sentences from the dialogue below.

8 Examples from the Dialogue:

1. アシュリー: 中禅寺湖で散歩をしてボートに乗りたいです。
Ashur : Ch senji-ko de sanpo shite b to ni noritai desu.
Ashley: "And I also want to take a walk around Ch senjiko and ride in a boat."
2. 光岡(父) : じゃ、早く**食べて**、行きましょう。
Mitsuoka (chichi): Ja, hayaku tabete, ikimash .
Mr. Mitsuoka: "Well then, let's eat quickly and go!"

Other Examples:

1. 明日、築地に行って、すしを**食べます**。
Ashita, Tsukiji ni itte, sushi o **tabemasu**.
"Tomorrow I will go to Tsukiji and eat sushi."

昨日、築地に行って、すしを食べました。

Kin , Tsukiji ni itte, sushi o **tabemashita**.

"Yesterday, I went to Tsukiji and ate sushi."

Creating Adverbs From Adjectives

Let's take a look at how to form adverbs from adjectives.

For i-adjectives:

1. Remove the final -i (い)
2. Add -ku (く)

| i-adjective | Meaning | Adverb | Meaning |
|-----------------|--------------|------------------|-----------|
| 早い hayai | early, quick | 早く hayaku | quickly |
| 安い yasui | cheap | 安く yasuku | cheaply |
| 楽しい tanoshii | enjoyable | 楽しく tanoshiku | enjoyably |
| 強い tsuyoi | strong | 強く tsuyoku | strongly |

Example from the Dialogue:

光岡(父) : じゃ、早く食べて、行きましょう。

Mitsuoka (chichi): Ja, hayaku tabete, ikimash .

Mr. Mitsuoka: Well then, let's eat quickly and go!

For na-adjectives:

1. Change the na (な) to ni (に)

| na-adjective | Meaning | Adverb | Meaning |
|-------------------------|----------|---------------------|-------------------------|
| まっすぐ(な) massugu (na) | straight | まっすぐに massugu ni | straight (as adverb) |
| しずか(な) | quiet | しずかに | quietly |
| | | | |

| | | | |
|--------------|--------|------------|--------|
| shizuka (na) | | shizuka ni | |
| かんたん(な) | simple | かんたんに | simply |
| kantan (na) | | kantan ni | |

Other Examples:

しずかに話してください。

Shizuka ni hanashite kudasai.

"Please speak quietly."

[Vocab Usage: Itadakimasu](#)

Itadakimasu (いただきます) - In the dialog, Ashley said itadakimasu (いただきます) before eating the meal that Mrs. Mitsuoka prepared. This phrase is commonly said before eating a meal that someone else has prepared for you. Itadakimasu is actually a humble verb that means "to receive", so this phrase literally means "I am about to receive", but a more practical translation would be something similar to "Thank you for the meal".

10

Cultural Insight

Nikko

Nikko is a very popular tourist destination located roughly two hours north of Tokyo by train. Nikko is home to the famous Toshogu Shrine, a lavishly decorated shrine where Tokugawa Ieyasu, the leader of the Tokugawa Shogunate, is buried. Nikko is also home to Kegon no Taki ("Kegon Waterfall"), one of the highest waterfalls in Japan, as well as Chuzenji-ko ("Lake Chuzenji"). Nikko is an especially popular destination in October and November, when you can see the colorful autumn foliage.



Gengo Japanese S1

Joking in Japanese - Do You Think This is Funny?

27

| | |
|---------------------|----|
| Formal Kanji | 2 |
| Formal Kana | 2 |
| Formal Romanization | 3 |
| English | 4 |
| Vocabulary | 4 |
| Grammar Points | 6 |
| Cultural Insight | 12 |

Formal Kanji

豊田一郎 ごめん、アシュリーさん、待った？
 アシュリー いえ、私も今着きました。
 豊田一郎 ここ、いい、お店だね。
 どうして、知っているの？
 アシュリー 内緒です。
 タクシーの運転手さんから聞きました。
 豊田一郎 で、日光はどうだった。
 アシュリー よかったですよ。
 二日間ホームステイしました。
 あ、これ、日光のお土産です。
 豊田一郎 え？ありがとう。うれしいなあ。
 ヘー。東照宮に行ったの？
 アシュリー はい、とても立派で、びっくりしました。
 それから、華嚴の滝に行ったり、散歩したり、ボートに乗ったり
 しました。
 本当に楽しかったです。
 豊田一郎 他に、日本で何をしたの？
 アシュリー 会社の人と居酒屋に行ったり、花火を見たりしました。
 豊田一郎 いいなあ……。今年、僕、花火見なかったよ。。
 で、いつまで日本にいるの。
 アシュリー あと、一週間です。
 明日、会社に行って、働きます。
 月曜日から木曜日まで、四日間仕事をします。
 それから、三日間、富士山に行ったり、築地に行ったり、買い物
 をしたりします。

Formal Kana

とよたいちろう ごめん、アシュリーさん、まった？
 アシュリー いえ、わたしもいまつきました。
 とよたいちろう ここ、いい、おみせだね。
 どうして、知っているの？
 アシュリー ないしょです。
 タクシーのうんてんしゅさんからききました。
 とよたいちろう で、にっこうはどうだった。
 アシュリー よかったですよ。

ふつかかんホームステイしました。
 あ、これ、にっこうのおみやげです。
 とよたいちろう え？ありがとう。うれしいなあ。
 アシュリー ヘー。とうしょうぐうにいったの？
 はい、とてもりっぱで、びっくりしました。
 それから、けごんのたきにいたり、さんぽしたり、ボートにの
 ったりしました。
 ほんとうにたのしかったです。
 とよたいちろう ほかに、にほんでなにをしたの？
 アシュリー かいしゃのひとといざかやにいたり、はなびをみたりしました
 。
 とよたいちろう いいなあ・・・。ことし、ぼく、はなびみなかったよ。。。
 で、いつまでにほんにいるの。
 アシュリー あと、いっしゅうかんです。
 あした、かいしゃにいて、はたらきます。
 げつようびからもくようびまで、よっかかんしごとをします。
 それから、みっかかん、ふじさんにいたり、つきじにいたり
 、かいものをしたりします。

Formal Romanization

3

| | |
|--------------|--|
| Toyota Ichir | Gomen, Ashur -san, matta? |
| Ashur | Ie, watashi mo ima tsukimashita. |
| Toyota Ichir | Koko, ii, o-mise da ne. |
| | D shite, shitte iru no? |
| Ashur | Naisho desu.(laughs) |
| | Takush no untenshu-san kara kikimashita. |
| Toyota Ichir | De, Nikk wa d datta. |
| Ashur | Yokatta desu yo. |
| | Futsuka-kan h musutei shimashita. |
| | A, kore, Nikk no o-miyage desu. |
| Toyota Ichir | E? Arigat . Ureshii n . |
| | H . T sh g ni itta no? |
| Ashur | Hai, totemo rippa de, bikkuri shimashita. |
| | Sore kara, Kego no Taki ni ittari, sanpo shitari, b to ni nottari shimashita. |
| | Hont ni tanoshikatta desu. |
| Toyota Ichir | Hoka ni, Nihon de nani o shita no? |
| Ashur | Kaisha no hito to izakaya ni ittari, hanabi o mitari shimashita. |

Toyota Ichir li n Kotoshi, boku, hanabi minakatta yo...
 De, itsu made Nihon ni iru no.
 Ashur Ato, issh -kan desu.
 Ashita, kaisha ni itte, hatarakimasu.
 Getsuy bi kara mokuy bi made, yokka-kan shigoto o shimasu.
 Sore kara, mikka-kan, Fuji-san ni ittari, Tsukiji ni ittari, kaimono o
 shitari shimasu.

English

Ichiro Toyota Sorry Ashley, did you wait long?
 Ashley No, I just got here myself.
 Ichiro Toyota This is a great restaurant.
 How do you know about it?
 Ashley It's a secret.
 I heard about it from a taxi driver.
 Ichiro Toyota So, how was Nikko?
 Ashley It was great!
 I did a homestay for two days.
 Oh, here's a gift from Nikko.
 Ichiro Toyota Oh? Thanks! I'm so happy.
 Oh, you went to Toshogu?
 Ashley Yes, it was really magnificent, I was surprised!
 And then I went to the Kegon Waterfall, took a walk, rode in a
 boat, and more.
 It was really fun.
 Ichiro Toyota What else have you done in Japan?
 Ashley I went to an izakaya with my coworkers, saw fireworks, and so
 on.
 Ichiro Toyota How nice...I didn't see any fireworks this year.
 So, until when are you in Japan?
 Ashley I have one more week.
 Tomorrow I'm going to the office to work.
 I'll be working for four days from Monday to Thursday.
 And then, for three days I'm going to go to Mt. Fuji, going to
 Tsukiji, and going shopping and stuff.

Vocabulary

| Kanji | Kana | Romaji | English |
|-------|------|----------|------------------------------------|
| 店 | みせ | mise | shop, store |
| どうして | どうして | d shite | why, how |
| 知る | しる | shiru | to know, to understand; V1 |
| 嬉しい | うれしい | ureshii | happy, glad, Adj(i) |
| 居酒屋 | いざかや | izaka-ya | bar, pub |
| 着く | つく | tsuku | to arrive, to reach ; V1 |
| 内緒 | ないしょ | naisho | secrecy, secret |
| 聞く | きく | kiku | to listen, to ask; V1 |
| 立派 | りっぱ | rippa | splendid, magnificent ; Adj(na) |
| びっくり | びっくり | bikkuri | surprise |
| 他に | ほかに | hoka ni | in addition, besides, other |
| 働く | はたらく | hataraku | to work; V1 |
| いい | いい | ii | good, nice, pleasant, fine; Adj(i) |
| 土産 | みやげ | miyage | souvenir, present |

Vocabulary Sample Sentences

この店が好きです。
 どうして、日本に行きたいですか。
 あの人を知っていますか。
 嬉しいニュースがあります。
 日本の居酒屋が大好きです。
 今、駅に着きました。
 それは内緒です。
 よく日本の歌をききますか。
 エイブラハム・リンカーンは立派な人でした。
 。
 びっくりした！
 他に何をしたいですか。
 朝から昼まで働きます。
 いい天気ですね。
 お土産を買いました。

I like this store.
 Why do you want to go to Japan?
 Do you know that person over there?
 I have good news.
 I love Japanese-style bars.
 I just now got to the station.
 It's a secret.
 Do you often listen to Japanese songs?
 Abraham Lincoln was a magnificent person.
 。
 You scared me! (I'm surprised.)
 What else would you like to do?
 I work from morning to noon.
 The weather is nice, isn't it?
 I bought souvenirs.

Grammar Points

Gengo Japanese Lesson #27 - Joking in Japanese - Do You Think This is Funny?

他に、日本で何をしたの？

Hoka ni, Nihon de nani o shita no?

"What else have you done in Japan?"

In this lesson, you will:

Learn how to make the affirmative past tense of a verb ("I went")

Learn how to make the negative past tense of a verb ("I didn't go")

Learn how to express the concept of "and so on" using the -tari form

Making the Affirmative Past Tense ("I Went")

Let's take a look at how to create the past tense of both formal and informal verbs.

Formal

To turn a verb that is in the masu form into past tense, simply replace -masu (-ます) with -mashita (-ました).

| masu Form | -mashita | Translation |
|------------------|----------------------|-------------|
| 飲みます nomimasu | 飲みました nomimashita | "drank" |
| 食べます tabemasu | 食べました tabemashita | "ate" |
| します shimasu | しました shimashita | "did" |

1. アシュリー: タクシーの運転手さんから聞きました。
Ashur: Takushi no untenshu-san kara kikimashita.
Ashley: "I heard about it from a taxi driver."
2. アシュリー: 二日間ホームステイしました。
Ashur: Futsuka-kan h musutei shimashita.

Ashley: I did a homestay for two days.

Informal

In Lesson 23, we learned how to make the te-form of a verb. It's important to keep this in mind when we create the past tense. To create the past tense:

1. Conjugate the verb to te-form
2. Change the final te (て) to ta (た)*

*In the case of verbs whose dictionary form ends in -bu or -gu, we change de (で) to da (だ)

| Dictionary Form | Te-Form | Ta-Form | Translation |
|-----------------|---------------|---------------|-------------|
| 行く iku | 行って itte | 行った itta | "went" |
| 待つ matsu | 待って matte | 待った matta | "waited" |
| 死ぬ shinu | 死んで shinde | 死んだ shinda | "died" |
| 飲む nomu | 飲んで nonde | 飲んだ nonda | "drank" |
| 泳ぐ oyogu | 泳いで oyoide | 泳いだ oyoida | "swam" |
| 呼ぶ yobu | 呼んで yonde | 呼んだ yonda | "called" |
| 帰る kaeru | 帰って kaette | 帰った kaetta | "returned" |
| 食べる taberu | 食べて tabete | 食べた tabeta | "ate" |
| する suru | して shite | した shita | "did" |
| 来る kuru | 来て kite | 来た kita | "came" |

Examples from the Dialogue:

1. 豊田一郎:ごめん、アシュリーさん、待った?
Toyota Ichir : Gomen, Ashur -san, matta?
Ichiro Toyota: "Sorry, Ashley, did you wait long?"

豊田一郎:他に、日本で何をしたの？

Toyota Ichir : Hoka ni, Nihon de nani o shita no?

Ichiro Toyota: "What else have you done in Japan?"

Making the Negative Past Tense ("I Didn't Go")

Now let's take a look at how to create the negative past tense of both formal and informal verbs.

Formal

To turn a verb that is in the masu form into negative past tense, simply replace -masen (-ません) with -masen deshita (-ませんでした).

-masen (-ません) -masen deshita (-ませんでした)

| -masen Form | -masen deshita | Translation |
|--------------------|-------------------------------|----------------|
| 飲みません nomimasen | 飲みませんでした nomimasen deshita | "didn't drink" |
| 食べません tabemasen | 食べませんでした tabemasen deshita | "didn't eat" |
| しません shimasen | しませんでした shimasen deshita | "didn't do" |

Example:

今朝朝ごはんを食べませんでした。

Kesa asagohan o tabemasen deshita.

"I didn't eat breakfast this morning."

Informal

To turn an informal negative verb into past tense, simply replace the final -i (い) with -katta (かった). You might notice that this way of conjugating is the same as i-adjectives.

-i (-い) -katta (-かった)

| Informal Negative | Informal Negative Past | Translation |
|-------------------|------------------------|-----------------|
| 行かない ikanai | 行かなかった ikanakatta | "didn't go" |
| 食べない tabenai | 食べなかった tabenakatta | "didn't eat" |
| 見ない minai | 見なかった minakatta | "didn't see" |
| 待たない matanai | 待たなかった matanakatta | "didn't wait" |
| 死なない shinanai | 死ななかった shinanakatta | "didn't die" |
| 飲まない nomanai | 飲まなかった nomanakatta | "didn't drink" |
| 泳がない oyoganai | 泳がなかった oyoganakatta | "didn't swim" |
| 呼ばない yobanai | 呼ばなかった yobanakatta | "didn't call" |
| 帰らない kaeranai | 帰らなかった kaeranakatta | "didn't return" |
| しない shinai | しなかった shinakatta | "didn't do" |
| 来ない konai | 来なかった konakatta | "didn't come" |

Example from the Dialogue:

豊田一郎: 今年、僕(は)花火(を)見なかったよ。

Toyota Ichir : Kotoshi, boku (wa) hanabi (o) minakatta yo.

Ichiro Toyota: "I didn't see any fireworks this year."

"And So On...": Using the -tari form

In the last lesson, we learned how to use join verbs to talk about multiple actions using the te-form:

- 私は買い物をしてランチを食べた。
 Watashi wa kaimono o shite ranchi o tabeta.
 "I went shopping and ate lunch."

In this sentence, we join both verbs by putting the first verb (in this case suru) in the te-form. This sentence implies that we only did two things: went shopping, and ate lunch.

Now, what if we want to convey the idea that we did these things and more without going into the details? To do this, we can use the -tari form. We use the -tari form to list an incomplete set of actions or states. We can use this form by adding -ri to the end of the informal past form of all verbs in the sentence and ending it with a form of the verb suru. Let's rewrite the sentence we just looked at:

- 私は買い物をしたりランチを食べたりした。
 Watashi wa kaimono o shitari ranchi o tabetari shita.
 "I went shopping, ate lunch, and so on."

[Vari + tari suru]

| Dictionary Form | Informal Past | Add ri | -tari Form |
|-----------------|---------------|-------------|------------------|
| 行く iku | 行った itta | + り + ri | 行ったり ittari |
| 遊ぶ asobu | 遊んだ asonda | + り + ri | 遊んだり asondari |
| 食べる taberu | 食べた tabeta | + り + ri | 食べたり tabetari |
| する suru | した shita | + り + ri | したり shitari |
| 来る kuru | 来た kita | + り + ri | 来たり kitari |

The tense of the sentence is determined by the tense of the suru (する) at the end. For example, if the final suru (する) is in the past tense form shita (した), then all actions mentioned took place in the past. Let's compare some different examples:

Future

日本で寺に行ったり観光したりする。

Nihon de tera ni ittari kank shitari **suru**.

"In Japan, **I'm going to** go to temples, go sightseeing, and so on."

Past

去年日本で寺に行ったり観光したりした。

Kyonen nihon de tera ni ittari kank shitari **shita**.

"Last year in Japan **I went** to temples, went sightseeing, and so on."

Desire

日本で寺に行ったり観光したりしたい。

Nihon de tera ni ittari kank shitari **shitai**.

"In Japan, **I want to** go to temples, go sightseeing, and so on."

Examples from the Dialog:

- アシュリー: 華厳の滝に行ったり、散歩したり、ボートに乗ったりしました。

Ashur : Kegon no Taki ni ittari, sanpo shitari, b to ni nottari shimashita.

Ashley: "I went to the Kegon Waterfall, took a walk, rode in a boat, and more."

- アシュリー: 会社の人と居酒屋に行ったり、花火を見たりしました。

Ashur : Kaisha no hito to izakaya ni ittari, hanabi o mitari shimashita.

Ashley: "I went to an izakaya with my coworkers, saw fireworks, and so on."

- アシュリー: 三日間、富士山に行ったり、築地に行ったり、買い物をしたりします。

Ashur : Mikka-kan, Fuji-san ni ittari, Tsukiji ni ittari, kaimono o shitari shimasu.

Ashley: "For three days, I'm going to go to Mt. Fuji, go to Tukiji, go shopping, and stuff."

In the Appendix

In this lesson, we saw some phrases that express duration of time:

三日間 - mikka-kan - "three days"

四日間 - yokka-kan - "four days"

For more detailed information on expressing duration of time, please check the following Appendix lessons: Time Duration 1: Hours and Minutes (Appendix #5) and Time Duration 2: Days, Weeks, Months, and Years (Appendix #6)

Cultural Insight

Izakaya

An izakaya refers to a Japanese drinking establishment that is similar to a bar but also serves food along with the drinks. The food at izakaya is usually more substantial than that served at regular bars. While there are some high-end izakaya, the majority of izakaya are very reasonable and have a casual atmosphere. Izakaya can basically be divided into two groups: large izakaya that are part of a chain; and small, locally-owned izakaya. When you go to a large chain izakaya you are usually socializing with the group that you are with, but at a smaller izakaya you can meet and socialize with other customers and locals.



Gengo Japanese S1

How to See All the Important Sites in the Shortest Amount of Time

28

| | |
|---------------------|---|
| Formal Kanji | 2 |
| Formal Kana | 2 |
| Formal Romanization | 3 |
| English | 3 |
| Vocabulary | 4 |
| Grammar Points | 5 |
| Cultural Insight | 9 |

Formal Kanji

| | |
|-------|--|
| アシュリー | あの...ちょっと、質問をしてもいいですか。 |
| 受付 | このレッツエンジョイ築地ツアーはどのくらいかかりますか。 お金は、お一人様、一万円かかります。 時間は五時間かかります。 朝七時から、大体昼12時までです。 |
| アシュリー | ガイドさんは英語ができますか。 |
| 受付 | はい。もちろん、できますよ。 |
| アシュリー | じゃ、今週の土曜日のツアー、予約できますか。 |
| 受付 | 少々お待ちください。 はい。まだ、できます。 では、こちらに、お名前、ご連絡先をお願いします。 |
| アシュリー | ペンを借りてもいいですか。 |
| 受付 | はい、どうぞ。(Ashley fills out the form) では、29日土曜日、午前6時50分に築地郵便局の前に来てく ださい。 これは、地図です。 |
| アシュリー | ありがとうございます。 |
| 受付 | あのぉ...。品川から、築地までどのくらいかかりますか。 |
| アシュリー | 30分くらいかかります。 |
| 受付 | あの、築地で写真をとってもいいですか。 |
| 受付 | ちょっと、わからないですね。ガイドにきいてください。 |

Formal Kana

| | |
|-------|---|
| アシュリー | あの...ちょっと、しつもんをしてもいいですか。 |
| うけつけ | このレッツエンジョイつきじツアーはどのくらいかかりますか。 おかねは、おひとりさま、いちまんえんかかります。 じかんはごじかんかかります。 あさしちじから、だいたいひるじゅうにじまでです。 |
| アシュリー | ガイドさんはえいごができますか。 |
| うけつけ | はい。もちろん、できますよ。 |
| アシュリー | じゃ、こんしゅうのどようびのツアー、よやくできますか。 |
| うけつけ | しょうしょうおまちください。 はい。まだ、できます。 では、こちらに、おなまえ、ごれんらくさきをおねがいします。 |
| アシュリー | ペンをかりてもいいですか。 |

うけつけ はい、どうぞ。(Ashley fills out the form)
 では、にじゅうくにちどようび、ごぜんろくじごじゅっぱんにつ
 きじゅうびんきょくのまえにきてください。
 これは、ちずです。
 アシュリー ありがとうございます。
 あのぉ...。しながわから、つきじまでどのくらいかかりますか。
 うけつけ さんじゅっぱんくらいかかります。
 アシュリー あの、つきじでしゃしんをとってもいいですか。
 うけつけ ちょっと、わからないですね。ガイドにきいてください。

Formal Romanization

Ashur Ano... chotto, shitsumon o shite mo ii desu ka.
 Kono Rettsu Enjoi Tsukiji tsu wa dono kurai kakarimasu ka.
 Uketsuke O-kane wa, o-hitori-sama, ichiman-en kakarimasu.
 Jikan wa go-jikan kakarimasu.
 Asa shichi-ji kara, daitai hiru j ni-ji made desu.
 Ashur Gaido-san wa eigo ga dekimasu ka.
 Uketsuke Hai. Mochiron, dekimasu yo.
 Ashur Ja, konsh no doy bi no tsu , yoyaku dekimasu ka.
 Uketsuke Sh sh o-machi kudasai.
 Hai. Mada, dekimasu.
 Dewa, kochira ni, o-namae, go-renrakusaki o onegai shimasu.
 Ashur Pen o karite mo ii desu ka.
 Uketsuke Hai, d zo. (Ashley fills out the form)
 Dewa, ni-j ku-nichi doy bi, gozen roku-ji goju-ppun ni Tsukiji
 y binkyoku no mae ni kite kudasai.
 Kore wa, chizu desu.
 Ashur Arigat gozaimasu.
 An Shinagawa kara, Tsukiji made dono kurai kakarimasu ka.
 Uketsuke San-ju-ppun kurai kakarimasu.
 Ashur Ano, Tsukiji de shashin o totte mo ii desu ka.
 Uketsuke Chotto, wakaranai desu ne. Gaido ni kiite kudasai.

English

Ashley Um...can I ask a question?

- Receptionist How much does the “ Let's Enjoy Tsukiji Tour ” cost?
 Money-wise, it costs 10,000 yen for one person.
 Time-wise, it takes five hours.
 It's from seven in the morning to about twelve noon.
- Ashley Can the guide speak English?
- Receptionist Yes, of course.
- Ashley Okay, then can I make a reservation for the tour on Saturday of this week?
- Receptionist Please wait one moment.
 Yes, you can still do that.
 Please write your name and contact information here.
- Ashley May I borrow a pen?
- Receptionist Yes, here you are. (Ashley fills out the form)
 Okay, on Saturday the 29th, please come to the Tsukiji Post Office at six-fifty AM.
 Here's a map.
- Ashley Thank you very much.
 Um, how long does it take from Shinagawa to Tsukiji?
- Receptionist It takes about thirty minutes.
- Ashley And, can I take pictures at Tsukiji?
- Receptionist I'm not sure. Please ask the guide.

Vocabulary

| Kanji | Kana | Romaji | English |
|-------|-----------|-------------|---------------------------|
| どのくらい | どのくらい | dono kurai | how long, how much... |
| かかる | かかる | kakaru | to take (time, money); V1 |
| 大体 | だいたい | daitai | about, approximately |
| まだ | まだ | mada | yet, still |
| ペン | ペン | pen | pen |
| お金 | おかね | o-kane | money |
| ガイド | ガイド | gaido | tour guide |
| 連絡先 | れんらくさき | renrakusaki | contact address |
| 借りる | かりる | kariru | to borrow, to rent; V2 |
| 質問 | しつもん | shitsumon | question, inquiry |
| 少々 | しょうしょう | sh sh | a little, small quantity |
| 位 | くらい / ぐらい | kurai/gurai | approximately, about |
| 郵便局 | ゆうびんきょく | y binkyoku | post office |

| | | | |
|------|------|----------|----------------------|
| だいたい | だいたい | daitai | about, approximately |
| もちろん | もちろん | mochiron | Of course. |
| くらい | くらい | kurai | approximately, about |

Vocabulary Sample Sentences

新宿から渋谷までどのくらいですか。
一時間位かかります。
日本からタイまで大体六時間です。

まだ帰りません。
そのペンは誰のですか。
お金がありません。
下山さんは観光ガイドです。
アシュリーさんの連絡先がわかりますか。
携帯を借りたいです。
すみません。質問があります。
少々お酒を飲みました。
家から会社まで二十分位です。

まっすぐ行って、郵便局で右に曲がる。
東京から新潟まで、新幹線でだいたい一万円
です。
もちろん、行きます。
1000円くらいのシャーペンを買った。

How far is it from Shinjuku to Shibuya?
It takes about an hour.
It takes about 6 hours to get to Thailand from Japan.
I won't go home yet.
Whose pen is it?
I don't have any money.
Mr. Shimoyama is a tour guide.
Do you know Ashley's contact address?
I'd like to rent a cell phone.
Excuse me. I have a question.
I drank a little alcohol.
It takes about 20 minutes from my house to the company.
Go straight and turn right at the post office.
It costs about 10,000 yen for a bullet train from Tokyo to Niigata.
Of course, I'm going.
I bought a mechanical pencil which costs about 1000 yen.

Grammar Points

Gengo Japanese Lesson #28 - How to See All the Important Sites in the Shortest Amount of Time

ガイドさんは英語ができますか。

Gaido-san wa eigo ga dekimasu ka.

"Can the guide speak English?"

In this lesson, you will:

Learn how to ask for permission with -te mo ii desu ka (-てもいいですか)

Learn how to use the word dekiru(できる) to talk about what you can do

Learn how to use the word kakaru (かかる) to ask about time and cost

Asking for Permission

We use the phrase -te mo ii desu ka (～てもいいですか) when asking the listener for permission to do something. This consists of a verb in the te-form plus particle mo (も), the adjective ii (いい), the copula desu (です), and the question marker ka (か).

[te-form of verb + mo ii desu ka?] = "May I ...?"

| Original Phrase | Translation | Te-form of Verb + いいですか? | Translation |
|--------------------------|----------------------------|---|-------------------------------|
| 聞く Kiku | to ask | 聞いてもいいですか? Kiite mo ii desu ka? | May I ask something? |
| タバコをすう Tabako o su | to smoke | タバコをすってもいいですか? Tabako o sutte mo ii desu ka? | May I smoke? |
| テレビを見る Terebi o miru | to watch TV | テレビを見てもいいですか? Terebi o mite mo ii desu ka? | May I watch TV? |
| 辞書をかりる Jisho o kariru | to borrow one's dictionary | 辞書をかりてもいいですか? Jisho o karite mo ii desu ka? | May I borrow your dictionary? |

Examples from the Dialogue:

1. アシュリー: ペンを借りてもいいですか。
Ashur : Pen o karite mo ii desu ka.
Ashley: "May I borrow a pen?"
2. アシュリー: 写真をとってもいいですか。
Ashur : Shashin o totte mo ii desu ka.
Ashley: "Can I take pictures?"

We use the phrase -te mo ii desu (～てもいいです) when we give the listener permission to do something.

[te-form of verb + mo ii desu] = "You may..."

Note, however, that this construction has the potential to sound a little patronizing. If someone asks you a -te mo ii desu ka question, it would be better to just reply with a simple yes or no.

Using Dekiru to Talk About What You Can Do

Dekiru (できる) is the potential form of the verb suru (する), and has the meaning of "to be able to do." In some cases, the nuance is that someone is good at something, especially when used together with adverbs such as yoku (よく, "well").

[(Topic wa) Subject ga dekiru]

Note that when using dekiru (できる), the particle ga (が) is usually used to mark the direct object, rather than the direct object marker o (を).

Examples from the Dialogue:

1. アシュリー: ガイドさんは英語ができますか。
Ashur : Gaido-san wa eigo ga dekimasu ka.
Ashley: "Can the guide speak English?"
2. アシュリー: じゃ、今週の土曜日のツアー、予約できますか。
Ashur : Ja, konsh no doyobi no tsu , yoyaku dekimasu ka.
Ashley: "Okay, then can I make a reservation for the tour on Saturday of this week?"

Other Examples:

1. 私は料理ができる。
Watashi wa ry ri ga dekiru.
"I can cook."
2. 彼はスポーツがよくできる。

Kare wa sup tsu ga yoku dekiru.
 "He is good at sports."

Using Kakaru / Kakarimasu to Talk About Time and Cost

Kakarimasu (かかります) is the masu form of the verb kakaru (かかる). Kakaru (かかる) means that something takes time or costs money.

| Question: | Translation |
|--|--|
| [Dono kurai/Dono gurai] + kakarimasu ka? | |
| どのくらいかかりますか。 Dono kurai kakarimasu ka? | "How much does it <u>cost</u> ?" "How long does it <u>take</u> ?" |

Since we can use kakarimasu with both time and money, there is a good possibility that there will be confusion if you don't specify what you are talking about. To avoid confusion, you can insert the topic in the beginning of the sentence.

1. 金は、どのくらいかかりますか。
O-kane wa, dono kurai kakarimasu ka.
 "How much does it cost?"
2. 時間は、どのくらいかかりますか。
Jikan wa, dono kurai kakarimasu ka.
 "How long does it take?"

| Affirmative: | Translation |
|---|-----------------------------------|
| [amount of money/duration of time] + kakarimasu | |
| 千円かかります。 Sen-en kakarimasu. | It <u>costs</u> one thousand yen. |
| 一時間かかります。 Ichi-jikan kakarimasu. | It <u>takes</u> an hour. |

Examples from the Dialogue:

1. アシュリー: このレッツエンジョイ築地ツアーはどのくらいかかりますか。

Ashur : Kono Rettsu Enjoi Tsukiji Tsu wa dono kurai kakarimasu ka.

Ashley: "How much does the Let's Enjoy Tsukiji Tour cost?"

- 受付: お金は、お一人様、一万円がかかります。

Uketsuke: O-kane wa, o-hitori-sama, ichiman-en kakarimasu.

Receptionist: "Money-wise, it costs 10,000 yen for one person."

- 受付: 時間は五時間がかかります。

Uketsuke: Jikan wa go-jikan kakarimasu.

Receptionist: "Time-wise, it takes five hours."

Vocab Usage: Please wait one moment.

少々お待ちください。[Sh -sh o-machi kudasai.] "Please wait one moment."

- This phrase is used to politely ask someone to wait. It is often used in business situations or when speaking to a customer, as seen in the dialog when the receptionist uses it with Ashley.

In the Appendix

In this lesson, we saw a phrase that expresses time duration:

五時間 go-jikan - "five hours"

For more detailed information on expressing time duration, please check the following Appendix lessons: Time Duration 1: Hours and Minutes (Appendix #5) and Time Duration 2: Days, Weeks, Months, and Years (Appendix #6)

Cultural Insight

Tsukiji Fish Market

Tsukiji Fish Market is located in central Tokyo and is one of the largest fish markets in the world, handling over 2,000 tons of fish and other seafood a day that comes in from all over the world. Tsukiji Fish Market has become a major tourist attraction among Japanese and foreign visitors, with many visiting the market to watch the tuna auctions that take place at

around five in the morning. If you visit Tsukiji Fish Market, don't forget to stop by one of the many restaurants that surround the market where you can have some of the freshest sushi available!





Gengo Japanese S1

Master Speaking on the Phone and Put All of Your Japanese Friends a
Touch Away

29

| | |
|---------------------|---|
| Formal Kanji | 2 |
| Formal Kana | 2 |
| Formal Romanization | 3 |
| English | 3 |
| Vocabulary | 3 |
| Grammar Points | 4 |
| Cultural Insight | 7 |

Formal Kanji

アシュリー 090-9876-5432
(Telephone)
光岡れい携帯

はい、光岡です。
今、電話に出ることができません。
メッセージをお願いします。

(ピー)
アシュリー

もしもし、アシュリーです。
色々ありがとうございました。
おかげ様で、出張を楽しむことができました。
皆さんに会うことができ、よかったです。
お父さんとお母さんによろしく伝えてください。
明日、11時の飛行機でニューヨークに帰ります。
ぜひ、ニューヨークに来てくださいね。
またメールします。お元気で。さようなら。

Formal Kana

アシュリー ぜろ きゅう ぜろ の
(Telephone) きゅう はち なな ろく の ご よん さん に
みつおかれいけ たい い

はい、みつおかです。
いま、でんわにでることができません。
メッセージを おねがいします。

(ピー)
アシュリー

もしもし、アシュリーです。
いろいろ ありがとう ございました。
おかげさまで、しゅっちょうをたのしむことができました。
みなさんに あうことができ、よかったです。
おとうさんと おかあさんに よろしく つたえてください。
あした、じゅういちじの ひこうきで ニューヨークに かえり
ます。
ぜひ、ニューヨークに きてくださいね。
また メールします。おげんきで。さようなら。

Formal Romanization

Ashur
(Telephone)
Mitsuoka Rei
keitai

Zero ky zero no ky hachi nana roku no go yon san ni

Hai, Mitsuoka desu.

Ima, denwa ni deru koto ga dekimasen.

Mess ji o onegai shimasu.

(p)
Ashur

Moshimoshi, Ashur desu.

Iroiro arigat gozaimashita.

Okage-sama de, shucch o tanoshimu koto ga dekimashita.

Mina-san ni au koto ga dekite, yokatta desu.

O-t -san to o-k -san ni yoroshiku tsutaete kudasai.

Ashita, j ichi-ji no hik ki de Ny Y ku ni kaerimasu.

Zehi, Ny Y ku ni kite kudasai ne.

Mata m ru shimasu. O-genki de. Say nara.

English

Ashley
(Telephone)
Rei Mitsuoka's
cell phone

090-9876-5432

This is Mitsuoka.

I can't answer the phone right now.

Please leave a message.

(beep)
Ashley

Hello, this is Ashley.

Thank you so much for everything.

Thanks to you, I was able to enjoy my business trip.

I'm so glad to have met everyone.

Please say hello to your father and mother for me.

I'm going back to New York tomorrow on an eleven o ' clock flight.

Please come to New York!

I'll e-mail you. Take care. Goodbye.

Vocabulary

| Kanji | Kana | Romaji | English |
|-------|--------|---------------|----------------------------|
| 会う | あう | au | to meet; V1 |
| お元気で。 | おげんきで。 | O-genki de. | Take care. |
| さようなら | さようなら | say nara | Good bye. |
| 電話に出る | でんわにでる | denwa ni deru | to answer the phone; V2 |
| 伝える | つたえる | tsutaeru | to pass on; V2 |
| メッセージ | メッセージ | mess ji | message |
| 楽しむ | たのしむ | tanoshimu | to enjoy oneself ; V1 |
| よろしく | よろしく | yoroshiku | best regards |
| 色々 | いろいろ | iroiro | various ; Adj(na) |
| 飛行機 | ひこうき | hik ki | airplane |
| ぜひ | ぜひ | zahi | certainly, without fail |

Vocabulary Sample Sentences

明日、彼と会います。
 さようなら。お元気で。
 さようなら、また、明日。
 電話に出てください。
 ご家族によりよく伝えてください。
 何かメッセージはありますか。
 楽しんでいますか。
 ピーターによりよく。
 色々なものを食べました。
 初めて、飛行機に乗りました。
 ぜひ、また会いましょう。

I'll meet him tomorrow.
 Goodbye. Take care.
 Good bye, see you tomorrow.
 Please answer the phone.
 Please say hello to your family for me.
 Do you have any messages?
 Are you enjoying yourself?
 Say hi to Peter for me.
 I ate many different things.
 I got on an airplane for the first time.
 Let's meet again.

Grammar Points

Gengo Japanese Lesson #29 - Master Speaking on the Phone and Put All of Your Japanese Friends a Touch Away

ただ今、電話に出ることができません。

Tadaima, denwa ni deru koto ga dekimasen.

"I can't answer the phone right now."

In this lesson, you will:

Learn how to talk about what you can do with koto ga dekiru (ことができる)

Learn some set phrases used when saying goodbyes

Koto Ga Dekiru (ことができる)

We form this construction by attaching koto (こと) to the dictionary form of the chosen verb marking it with the particle ga, and completing the sentence with the verb dekimasu (できます).

[(Topic) + dictionary form of verb + koto ga dekimasu]

| | | |
|---|---|-------------------|
| およぐ oyogu "swim" | ことができます koto ga dekimasu ことができる koto ga dekiru | "(I) can (verb)." |
| うたう utau "sing" | | |
| 日本語を話す Nihon-go o hanasu "speak Japanese" | | |
| 写真をとる shashin o toru "take pictures" | | |

Example from the Dialogue:

光岡れい: ただ今、電話に出ることができません。

Mitsuoka Rei: Tadaima, denwa ni deru koto ga dekimasen.

Rei Mitsuoka: "I can't answer the phone right now."

Another Example:

(私は) 泳ぐことができます。

(Watashi wa) oyogu koto ga dekimasu.

"(I) can swim."

Let's compare this new potential construction with some constructions that we already know.

"I swim"/"I will swim."

Formal: 私は泳ぎます。 [Watashi wa oyogimasu.]

Informal: 私は泳ぐ。 [Watashi wa oyogu.]

"I can swim"/"I'm able to swim."

Formal: 私は泳ぐことができます。 [Watashi wa oyogu koto ga dekimasu.]

Informal: 私は泳ぐことができる。 [Watashi wa oyogu koto ga dekiru.]

Set Phrases Used When Saying Goodbye

--koto ga dekite yokatta desu (-- ことができてよかったです)

As we just learned, putting the phrase [verb] + koto ga dekiru (ことができる) after a verb in the dictionary form creates the potential form: "to be able to [verb]." By putting dekiru (できる) in the te-form and adding yokatta desu (よかったです) at the end, we can create a sentence that means that we are glad to have been able to [verb].

| | |
|--|--|
| 行くことができてよかったです。 Iku koto ga dekite yokatta desu. | I'm glad to have been able to go. |
| 話すことができてよかったです。 Hanasu koto ga dekite yokatta desu. | I'm glad to have been able to talk (with you). |

アシュリー: 皆さんに会うことができ、良かったです。

Ashur : Mina-san ni au koto ga dekite, yokatta desu.

Ashley: "I'm so glad to have met everyone."

Iroiro arigat gozaimashita (いろいろありがとうございました)

Iroiro (いろいろ) is a word that means "various" or "all kinds of." When coupled with arigat gozaimasu (ありがとうございます), the meaning becomes "Thank you for everything you have done," and implies that the listener did many things for the speaker.

Okage-sama de (おかげさまで)

This phrase literally means "thanks to you." We can use it even when the listener hasn't specifically done anything for the speaker, and in these cases it is very close in nuance to the English phrase "thanks for asking."

アシュリー: おかげ様で、出張を楽しむことができました。

Ashur: Okage-sama de, shucch o tanoshimu koto ga dekimashita.

Ashley: "Thanks to you I was able to enjoy my business trip."

-- ni yoroshiku tsutaete kudasai (--によろしく伝えてください)

We use this phrase when you want to tell someone to give your regards to someone else. The person's name comes before the particle ni (に). To make the phrase informal, you can leave off the tsutaete kudasai (伝えてください) completely.

アシュリー: お父さんとお母さんによろしく伝えてください。

Ashur: O-t -san to O-k -san ni yoroshiku tsutaete kudasai.

Ashley: "Please say hello to your father and mother for me."

O-genki de (お元気で)

This phrase means "take care" and is used towards someone that you will not see again for a long time or possibly ever. It cannot be used for everyday goodbyes.

アシュリー: お元気で。さようなら。

Ashur: O-genki de. Say nara.

Ashley: "Take care. Goodbye."

Cultural Insight

Phone Numbers in Japan

In Japan, cell phone numbers are eleven digits, and usually begin with either 080 or 090. PHS phone numbers usually start with 070. When reciting a phone number aloud in Japanese, the dashes can either be left out or pronounced as no (の).

Let's look at the example number from the dialogue:

090-9876-5432

zero ky zero (no) ky hachi nana roku (no) go yon san ni





Gengo Japanese S1

Where Does Your Japanese Go from Here?

30

| | |
|---------------------|----|
| Formal Kanji | 2 |
| Formal Kana | 2 |
| Formal Romanization | 3 |
| English | 4 |
| Vocabulary | 4 |
| Grammar Points | 5 |
| Cultural Insight | 12 |

Formal Kanji

- アシュリー チェックアウトお願いします。
 ホテル受付 かしこまりました。少々お待ちください。
 (cell phone rings)
 アシュリー 本田さん?...はい。そうです。
 今から、ホテルを出ます。
 色々お世話になりました。
 はい、え?もしもし?ああ、鈴木さん?
 ははは。はい、また日本に来たいです。
 ははは。鈴木さんは面白い人ですねえ。
 あ...はい。もしもし?光岡さん。本当にお世話になりました。
 ご両親によろしく。
 はい...頑張ります。光岡さんも仕事を頑張ってください。
 あ、本田さん?ええ。皆さんと話すことができて嬉しかったです。
 。
 ありがとうございました。じゃあ。また。スカイプしますね。
 ...はい。本田さんもお元気で。
- アシュリー ...
 ホテルの受付 お客様、大丈夫ですか。
 ティッシュ使いますか。
 アシュリー あ、ありがとうございます。
 帰りたくないです。日本に住みたいですよ。
 ホテルの受付 日本で働くことはできませんか。
 アシュリー あ...そうか。まあ...できますね。
 ちょっと、考えます。ありがとうございました。

Formal Kana

- アシュリー チェックアウトおねがいします。
 ホテルうけつけ かしこまりました。しょうしょうおまちください。
 (cell phone rings)
 アシュリー ほんださん?...はい。そうです。
 いまから、ホテルをでます。
 いろいろお世話になりました。
 はい、え?もしもし?ああ、すずきさん?
 ははは。はい、またにほんにきたいです。
 ははは。すずきさんはおもしろいひとですねえ。

あ...はい。もしもし？みつおかさん。ほんとうにお世話になりました。

ごりょうしんによろしく。

はい...がんばります。みつおかさんもしごとをがんばってください。

あ、ほんださん？ええ。みなさんとはなすことができてうれしかったです。

ありがとうございました。じゃあ。また。スカイプしますね。

...はい。ほんださんもおげんきで。

アシュリー

ホテルのうけつけ

...

おきゃくさま、だいじょうぶですか。

ティッシュつかいますか。

アシュリー

あ、ありがとうございます。

かえりたくないです。にほんにすみたいですよ。

ホテルのうけつけ

にほんではたらくことはできませんか。

アシュリー

あ...そうか。まあ...できますね。

ちょっと、かんがえます。ありがとうございました。

Formal Romanization

Ashur

Hoteru uketsuke
(cell phone rings)

Ashur

Chekku auto onegai shimasu.

Kashikomarimashita. Sh sh o-machi kudasai.

Honda-san?... Hai. S desu.

Ima kara, hoteru o demasu.

Iroiro o-sewa ni narimashita.

Hai, e? Moshimoshi? , Suzuki-san?

Hahaha. Hai, mata Nihon ni kitai desu.

Hahaha. Suzuki-san wa omoshiroi hito desu n .

A... hai. Moshimoshi? Mitsuoka-san. Hont ni o-sewa ni narimashita.

Go-ry shin ni yoroshiku.

Hai... ganbarimasu. Mitsuoka-san mo shigoto o ganbatte kudasai.

A, Honda-san? . Mina-san to hanasu koto ga dekite ureshikatta desu.

Arigat gozaimashita. J . mata. Sukaipu shimasu ne.

... Hai. Honda-san mo o-genki de.

Ashur ...
 Hoteru no O-kyaku-sama, daij bu desu ka.
 uketsuke
 Tisshu tsukaimasu ka.
 Ashur A, arigat gozaimasu.
 Kaeritakunai desu. Nihon ni sumitai desu yo.
 Hoteru no Nihon de hataraku koto wa dekimasen ka.
 uketsuke
 Ashur A... s ka. M ... dekimasu ne.
 Chotto, kangaemasu. Arigat gozaimashita.

English

Ashley (sigh) I'd like to check out.
 Receptionist Certainly. Please wait one moment.
 (cell phone rings)
 Ashley Honda-san? ...Yes, that's right.
 I'm leaving the hotel right now.
 Thank you so much for everything.
 Yes...huh? Hello? Ohh, Suzuki-san?
 Hahaha. Yes, I'd like to come to Japan again.
 Hahaha. You're so funny, Suzuki-san.
 Oh...okay. Hello? Mitsuoka-san? Thank you for everything you've
 done for me.
 Say hello to your parents for me.
 Yes...I'll do my best. Good luck with your work, too!
 Oh, Honda-san? Yes. I'm so happy that I can talk to everyone.
 Thank you so much. Well, see you later. I'll Skype you, okay?
 ...Okay. You take care, too.
 Ashley (starts sobbing)
 Receptionist Ma'am, are you all right?
 Do you need a tissue?
 Ashley Oh, thank you. (Blows her nose)
 I don't want to go home. I want to live in Japan.
 Receptionist Couldn't you work in Japan?
 Ashley Oh...yeah. I suppose I could.
 I'll think about it. Thank you very much.

Vocabulary

| Kanji | Kana | Romaji | English |
|------------|------------|------------------------|--|
| 使う | つかう | tsukau | to use; V1 |
| 住む | すむ | sumu | to live; V1 |
| チェックアウト | チェックアウト | chekku auto | check out |
| お世話になりました。 | お世話になりました。 | O-sewa ni narimashita. | Thank you for your kindness/hospitality. |
| スカイプ | スカイプ | sukaipu | Skype |
| がんばる | がんばる | ganbaru | to do one's best; V1 |
| ティッシュ | ティッシュ | tisshu | tissue |
| 考える | かんがえる | kangaeru | to think about; V2 |
| かしこまりました。 | かしこまりました。 | Kashikomarimashita | all right, certainly (From clerk to customer) |
| まあ | まあ | m | well, oh, wow |

Vocabulary Sample Sentences

フラッシュを使わないでください。
東京に住んでいます。
9時にホテルをチェックアウトしました。
お世話になりました。
スカイプで話しましょう。
さあ、がんばりましょう。
すみません、ティッシュありますか。
ゆっくり考えてください。
かしこまりました。
まあ、おいしかったです。

Do not use flash please.
I live in Tokyo.
I checked out of the hotel at nine.
Thank you for your kindness.
Let's talk on Skype.
Now, let's do our best.
Excuse me, do you have a tissue?
Take your time and think about it.
Certainly.
Well... it was tasty.

Grammar Points

Gengo Japanese Lesson #30 - Where Does Your Japanese Go from Here?

光岡さんも仕事を頑張ってください。

Mitsuoka-san mo shigoto o ganbatte kudasai.

"Good luck with your work, too!"

In this lesson, you will:

Review various verb constructions that we have learned

Learn how to talk about where you live

Learn how to use the verb ganbaru

Review

Let's review the different verb constructions we learned throughout Gengo Japanese.

Formal Verb Chart

| | -masu Form | Past Tense | Negative | Negative Past Tense |
|---------|------------------|----------------------|--------------------|-------------------------------|
| Class 1 | 飲みます nomimasu | 飲みました nomimashita | 飲みません nomimasen | 飲みませんでした nomimasen deshita |
| Class 2 | 食べます tabemasu | 食べました tabemashita | 食べません tabemasen | 食べませんでした tabemasen deshita |
| Class 3 | します shimasu | しました shimashita | しません shimasen | しませんでした shimasen deshita |

Informal Verb Chart

| | Dictionary Form | Past Tense | Negative | Negative Past Tense |
|---------|-----------------|---------------|-----------------|-----------------------|
| Class 1 | 飲む nomu | 飲んだ nonda | 飲まない nomanai | 飲まなかった nomanakatta |
| Class 2 | 食べる taberu | 食べた tabeta | 食べない tabenai | 食べなかった tabenakatta |
| Class 3 | する suru | した shita | しない shinai | しなかった shinakatta |

Polite Volitional (Lesson 17)

1. Start with masu form

Take away -masu
- Attach -mash

| | |
|------------------|--------------------|
| 飲みます nomimasu | 飲みましょう nomimash |
|------------------|--------------------|

Example:

お茶を飲みましょう。
O-cha o nomimash .
"Let's drink tea?"

Inviting someone to do something (Lesson 19)

Formal

1. Take away -masu
2. Attach -masen ka

| | |
|------------------|--------------------------|
| 飲みます nomimasu | 飲みませんか？ nomimasen ka? |
|------------------|--------------------------|

Informal

1. Drop the final -u
2. Add -anai

| | |
|------------|-------------------|
| 飲む nomu | 飲まない？ nomanai? |
|------------|-------------------|

Examples:

Formal:

お茶を飲みませんか？
O-cha o nomimasen ka?

"Would you like to drink some tea?"

Informal:

お茶(を)飲まない？

O-cha o nomanai?

"Wanna drink some tea?"

Expressing desire (Lesson 21)

1. Start with masu form
2. Take away -masu
3. Add -tai (desu)

| | |
|----------|----------------|
| 飲みます | 飲みたい(です) |
| nomimasu | nomitai (desu) |

Examples:

Formal:

お茶を飲みたいです。

O-cha o nomitai desu.

"I want to drink tea."

Informal:

お茶を飲みたい。

O-cha o nomitai.

"I want to drink tea."

Negative:

To say that we don't want to do something, we conjugate the -tai the same way we conjugate i-adjectives: simply replace the final "i" with -kunai. Add desu in a formal situation. The first example we saw of this was in this lesson's dialogue.

| | |
|---------|-------------|
| 飲みたい | 飲みたくない |
| nomitai | nomitakunai |

Examples:

Formal:

帰りたくないです。
Kaeritakunai desu.
"I don't want to go home."

Informal:

帰りたくない。
Kaeritakunai.
"I don't want to go home."

Giving commands (Lesson 23)

1. Start with dictionary form
2. Put verb in te-form
3. Add kudasai for a polite request

| | |
|------|-----------------|
| 飲む | 飲んで (ください) |
| nomu | nonde (kudasai) |

Examples:

Formal:

お茶を飲んでください。
O-cha o nonde kudasai.
"Please drink some tea."

Informal:

お茶を飲んで。
O-cha o nonde.

"Drink some tea."

On-going actions or states (Lesson 24)

1. Start with dictionary form
2. Put verb in te-form
3. Add iru/imasu

Formal

| | |
|------|-------------|
| 飲みます | 飲んでいます |
| nomu | nonde imasu |

Informal

| | |
|------|-----------|
| 飲む | 飲んでいる |
| nomu | nonde iru |

Examples:

Formal:

お茶を飲んでいます。
O-cha o nonde imasu.
"I'm drinking tea."

Informal:

お茶を飲んでいる。
O-cha o nonde iru.
"I'm drinking tea."

Telling someone not to do something (Lesson 25)

1. Start with dictionary form
2. Change it to the negative form

- Add de
- Add kudasai for a polite request

| | |
|------------|-----------------------------------|
| 飲む nomu | 飲まないで(ください) nomanai de kudasai |
|------------|-----------------------------------|

Examples:

Formal:

お茶を飲まないでください。
O-cha o nomanai de kudasai.
"Please don't drink tea."

Informal:

お茶を飲まないで。
O-cha o nomanai de.
"Don't drink tea."

Talking About Where You Live

The verb sumu (住む) means "to live." We put it in the te-form and add iru / imasu (いる / います) to talk about where we currently live. The place the subject lives is marked by the particle ni (に).

Formal: [place] ni sunde imasu = "I live in [place]"

Informal: [place] ni sunde iru = "I live in [place]"

| | | |
|--------------|-------------------------|----------------------|
| イギリスに住んでいます。 | Igirisu ni sunde imasu. | "I live in England." |
| 東京に住んでいます。 | T ky ni sunde imasu. | "I live in Tokyo." |
| どこに住んでいますか。 | Doko ni sunde imasu ka. | "Where do you live?" |

In the example from the dialogue, sumu (住む) is put into the -tai (たい) form that we covered

in Lesson 21:

アシュリー: 日本に住みたいですよ。

Ashur : Nihon ni sumitai desu yo.

Ashley: "I want to live in Japan."

Using ganbaru (がんばる)

Ganbaru (がんばる) is a very common verb that means to "do one's best" or to "work very hard" When put into the te-form and used as an exclamation (ganbatte! がんばって!), it is similar to "good luck!" or "do your best!" in English. You can indicate what someone is going to work hard on by using the direct object particle o (を), as seen in the dialogue.

Examples from the Dialogue:

1. アシュリー: はい、...頑張ります。

Ashur : Hai... ganbarimasu.

Ashley: "Yes...I'll do my best."

2. アシュリー: 光岡さんも仕事を頑張ってください。

Ashur : Mitsuoka-san mo shigoto o ganbatte kudasai.

Ashley: "Good luck with your work, too!"

Cultural Insight

Expressing Gratitude

Using the grammar and phrases you studied in this series, you'll be able to write a thank you letter or e-mail to people who have taken care of you in some way, such as a host family.

For example:

O-sewa ni narimashita (お世話になりました) - Lesson 25

→wa tanoshikatta desu (~は楽しかったです) - Lesson 19

Mata aimash /asobimash . (また会いましょう / 遊びましょう) - Lesson 17

O-genki de. (お元気で) - Lesson 29

Do you remember these phrases? They're very useful for writing a thank-you letter!

Expressing gratitude is very important in Japanese society. Not sending a thank-you letter or e-mail might send the message that something wasn't to your liking or that something was lacking in some way. If someone takes care of you or does something special for you, it would be a good idea to express your gratitude by sending a thank-you letter or e-mail.

Go to InnovativeLanguage.com/audiobooks to get the lesson notes for this course and sign up for your FREE lifetime account.

